

# ENGLISH COURSE

Book One



2012

NATALIS LANGUAGE CENTRE

# **Curso de Inglés**

## **Básico - Intermedio**

**Mirtha Condesa Araujo**

**Carolina Mejías Aravena**

**Francisco Palomino Correa**

**Gladis Demarchi**

**Luis Ignacio Silva Villarroel**

**2011**

# **Curso de Inglés**

## **Básico - Intermedio**

**Primera Edición**  
**Marzo 2009**

**Editorial**

**Santiago de Chile**

### **DERECHOS RESERVADOS**

**Queda prohibida la reproducción total o parcial de esta obra, sea por procedimientos mecánicos, electrónicos o químicos, incluyendo fotocopias, sin la debida autorización escrita del autor.**

**Inscripción Registro de Propiedad Intelectual.**

**N° 201558**

**2011**

### **Distribución y venta**

**Instituto de Idiomas Natalislang  
Vicuña Mackenna N° 6, oficina 4, piso 7  
Fono: 56 - 02 - 222 8721  
[www.natalislang.com](http://www.natalislang.com)**

**© Mirtha Condesa Araujo**

## **Presentación**

Este es un texto diseñado para ser utilizado tanto por profesores como por alumnos principiantes del idioma inglés. Es un método para cursos intensivos de 40 a 80 horas de trabajo con un profesor más igual número de horas de estudio individual o 50-60 horas de clases en forma autodidacta.

Para el profesor es una guía para ser seguida paso a paso, lo que lo llevará rápidamente a ver progresos en sus alumnos.

Los estudiantes que utilicen este libro de manera autodidacta, encontrarán una manera fácil de aclarar dudas y avanzar eficazmente en su proceso de aprendizaje.

### **Reconocimientos:**

Gracias a todos los que con su aporte ayudaron directa o indirectamente en la elaboración de este libro.

#### **Carolina Mejías Aravena**

Licenciada en Lengua Inglesa  
Pedagogía en el Idioma Inglés  
Universidad del Mar - Chile

#### **Francisco Palomino Correa**

Traductor e Intérprete  
Escuela Latinoamericana de Idiomas  
(ELADI) - Chile

#### **Gladis Demarchi Fumero**

Licenciada en Relaciones Internacionales  
Universidad de Rosario - Argentina

#### **Luis Ignacio Silva Villarroel**

Ilustrador y Publicista  
Universidad del Pacífico - Chile

### **Sobre el autor:**

**Mirtha Condesa A.** comienza el aprendizaje del idioma inglés a temprana edad y egresa de la Universidad Técnica del Estado en 1973 como profesora de enseñanza media. Durante algunos años se mantuvo alejada de la docencia, pero siempre en contacto con literatura relacionada con la metodología en la enseñanza de idiomas. En 1988 inaugura en la ciudad de Puerto Natales su propio centro de enseñanza del idioma inglés.

Como Instituto Natalis Language Centre, organiza en Puerto Natales cursos de inglés para niños, jóvenes y adultos, cursos para capacitar a jóvenes para que pudieran desenvolverse en el ámbito turístico y colabora en programas de educación propuestos por el entrante gobierno en 1990.

Durante estos años acumula una gran experiencia práctica en la enseñanza del idioma inglés y en 1997 decide trasladarse a Santiago, siendo este idioma su principal objetivo e incentivo para seguir perfeccionándose e ideando nuevas técnicas de enseñanza. Como resultado de todo esto, manifiesta su interés por hacer este manual para ayudar tanto a profesores como a alumnos autodidactas.

Se aclara que el presente manual no es un texto de gramática y que los conceptos están pensados en su utilidad funcional y no estrictamente lingüística, considerando que la meta del proyecto es facilitar el aprendizaje del idioma inglés de la manera más práctica y efectiva posible.

CONTENTS	PAGE
<b>GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES</b>	
Summary chart.....	09
<b>LESSON ONE</b>	
Uses of verb <i>to be</i> .....	10
Countable and uncountable nouns .....	21
Articles .....	25
Possessive adjectives and genitive .....	26
Comparative and superlative adjectives .....	27
Demonstrative adjectives .....	30
<i>Here</i> and <i>there</i> .....	31
Exercises of verb <i>to be</i> .....	33
<i>There is</i> and <i>there are</i> .....	37
Exercises of <i>there is</i> and <i>there are</i> .....	38
<b>LESSON TWO</b>	
Chart of tenses .....	40
Regular and irregular verbs.....	41
Cambios que sufre un Infinitivo.....	42
Verb <i>to look</i> .....	43
Verb <i>to wash</i> .....	44
Verb <i>to cry</i> .....	45
Verb <i>to study</i> .....	46
Verb <i>to read</i> .....	47
Verb <i>to write</i> .....	48
Verb <i>caminar</i> .....	49
Chart to complete.....	50
<b>LESSON THREE</b>	
Present Simple .....	51
Verbs <i>to do</i> , <i>to go</i> , <i>to have</i> and <i>to have got</i> .....	56
Adverbs .....	57
Pronouns .....	61
Direct and Indirect Object .....	62
Imperative .....	68
Present Simple exercises .....	69
<b>LESSON FOUR</b>	
Infinitive .....	75
Gerund .....	75
Present Continuous .....	78
Present Continuous exercises .....	81
<b>LESSON FIVE</b>	
Past Simple .....	87
Past Simple exercises .....	90
<i>It is</i> and <i>it was</i> .....	95
<i>So</i> and <i>neither</i> .....	95
Verb <i>to wonder</i> .....	96

Past Continuous .....	98
Used to .....	100
Past Continuous exercises.....	102
<b>LESSON SIX</b>	
Present Perfect .....	107
Prepositions .....	110
Present Perfect exercises .....	114
<b>LESSON SEVEN</b>	
<i>Going to</i> .....	120
<i>Going to</i> exercises .....	123
Question tags .....	128
Conjunctions .....	128
<b>LESSON EIGHT</b>	
Past Perfect .....	129
Past Perfect exercises .....	132
Modal verbs .....	138
Phrasal verbs .....	138
Pasive Voice .....	140
Indirect Speech .....	142
Conditionals .....	144
<b>LESSON NINE</b>	
Present Perfect Continuous .....	146
Past Perfect Continuous .....	149
Future Continuous.....	151
Future Perfect.....	153
Future Perfect Continuous.....	154
<b>APPENDIX</b>	
The use of apostrophe .....	155
Summary of words endings .....	157
Gerund and infinitive .....	159
Prepositions .....	160
Verb <i>to do</i> and <i>to make</i> .....	161
Irregular verbs.....	163
Phonetics symbols and sounds they represent .....	165
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b> .....	
	167



# **GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES**



## Cuadro resumen

Pronombres personales	Complementos	Adjetivos posesivos	Pronombres posesivos	Pronombres reflexivos
I	Me	My	Mine	Myself
You	You	Your	Yours	Yourself
He	Him	His	His	Himself
She	Her	Her	Hers	Herself
It	It	Its	Its	Itself
We	Us	Our	Ours	Ourselves
You	You	Your	Yours	Yourselves
They	Them	Their	Theirs	Themselves
<b>Interrogativos</b>				
What? What time? What day? What date? What colour? Which? Where? When? Why? Who? How? How often? How much? How many? How far? How long? How tall?		<b>El auxiliar no tiene significado pero sirve para:</b>  1) Indicar el tiempo. 2) Indicar concordancia entre el verbo y el sujeto. 3) Formular preguntas. 4) Formular oraciones negativas. 5) Contestar con respuestas cortas. 6) Reemplazar al verbo de la pregunta. 7) Cuando se usa el auxiliar <i>do</i> el verbo debe ir en infinitivo.		
<b>(Wh) + Auxiliar + Pronombre Personal + Verbo en Infinitivo + Complemento? Cosa</b>				
<b>Does</b> he – she – it		<b>doesn't</b> he – she - it		
<b>Do</b> I – you – we – they		<b>don't</b> I – you – we – they		

**LESSON ONE**  
*Uses of verb to be*  
**Countable and uncountable nouns**  
**Articles**  
**Possessive adjectives and genitive**  
**Comparative and superlative adjectives**  
**Demonstrative adjectives**  
*Here and there*  
**Exercises of verb to be**  
*There is and there are*

**¿Qué tengo que saber de este verbo?**

El verbo **to be** es muy importante en el idioma inglés. En español tiene dos significados **ser** y **estar**. El verbo **to be** es el único verbo en inglés que **no** necesita **un auxiliar** para la formación de negaciones y preguntas.

FORMA AFIRMATIVA	FORMA NEGATIVA	FORMA INTERROGATIVA
<b>I am (I'm)</b> Yo soy, estoy.	<b>I am not (I'm not).</b> Yo <b>no</b> soy, <b>no</b> estoy.	<b>Am I?</b> ¿Soy yo? ¿Estoy yo?
<b>You are (you're)</b> Tú eres, estás.	<b>You are not (you're not) (you aren't).</b> Tú <b>no</b> eres, <b>no</b> estás.	<b>Are you?</b> ¿Eres tú? ¿Estás tú?
<b>He is (he's)</b> Él es, está.	<b>He is not (he's not) (he isn't).</b> Él <b>no</b> es, <b>no</b> está.	<b>Is he?</b> ¿Es él? ¿Está él?
<b>She is (she's)</b> Ella es, está.	<b>She is not (she's not)(she isn't).</b> Ella <b>no</b> es, <b>no</b> está.	<b>Is she?</b> ¿Es ella? ¿Está ella?
<b>It is (it's)</b> Ello es, está.	<b>It is not (it's not)(it isn't).</b> Ello <b>no</b> es, <b>no</b> está.	<b>Is it?</b> ¿Es ello? ¿Está ello?
<b>We are (we're)</b> Nosotros - as somos, estamos.	<b>We are not (we're not)(we aren't).</b> Nosotros - as <b>no</b> somos, <b>no</b> estamos.	<b>Are we?</b> ¿Somos nosotros - as? ¿Estamos nosotros - as?
<b>You are (you're)</b> Ustedes son, están.	<b>You are not (you're not) (you aren't).</b> Ustedes <b>no</b> son – <b>no</b> están.	<b>Are you?</b> ¿Son ustedes? ¿Están ustedes?
<b>They are (they're)</b> Ellos son, están	<b>They are not (they're not) (they aren't).</b> Ellos <b>no</b> son, <b>no</b> están	<b>Are they?</b> ¿Son ellos? ¿Están ellos?

RESPUESTAS CORTAS			
Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.	Yes, we are.	No, we aren't. No, we're not.
Yes, you are.	No, you aren't. No, you're not.	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't. No, you're not.
Yes, he is.	No, he isn't. No, he's not.	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't. No, they're not.
Yes, she is.	No, she isn't. No, she's not.		
Yes, it is.	No, it isn't. No, it's not.		

## *¿Cuándo se usa el verbo to be?*

### **1. Para consultar por el nombre y el apellido de una persona:**

*Escuche y repita.*

What is your name?

My name is Mónica.

I am Mónica.

My name is Pedro.

I am Pedro

What's your name?

My name's Mónica.

I'm Mónica.

My name's Pedro.

I'm Pedro.

What is your family name?

My family name is Saldivia.

It's Saldivia.

What is your surname?

My surname is Saldivia.

It's Saldivia.

What is your last name?

My last name is Saldivia.

It's Saldivia.

\* Forename(s) = First name(s) = Mónica, Pedro, Luis, Ana, etc.

What is your name?

My name is Mónica Saldivia.

What's your name?

My name's Mónica Saldivia.

It is Mónica Saldivia.

It's Mónica Saldivia.

**What's your name?  
What's your last name?  
What's your surname?**



## **2. Se usa como parte de un saludo:**

*Escuche y repita*

How are you?	Fine, thank you.
How are you?	Very well, thank you.
How are you?	Fine, thanks. And you?
How are you?	I'm feeling great, thanks for asking. How are you?
How are you?	Fine, thanks.

**How are you?**

## **3. Para consultar de dónde es una persona:**

*Escuche y repita.*

Where are you from?	I am from Chile.	I am Chilean.
Where are you from?	I am from England.	I am English.
Where are you from?	I am from America.	I am American.
Where are you from?	I am from Japan.	I am Japanese.
Where are you from?	I am from Germany.	I am German.
Where are you from?	I am from Korea.	I am Korean.
Where are you from?	I am from Australia.	I am Australian.
Where are you from?	I am from Holland.	I am Dutch.
Where are you from?	I'm from Chile.	I'm Chilean.
Where are you from?	I'm from England.	I'm English.
Where are you from?	I'm from America.	I'm American.
Where are you from?	I'm from Japan.	I'm Japanese.
Where are you from?	I'm from Germany.	I'm German.
Where are you from?	I'm from Korea.	I'm Korean.
Where are you from?	I'm from Australia.	I'm Australian.
Where are you from?	I'm from Holland.	I'm Dutch.

**Where are you from?**

#### **4. Para hablar del día:**

*Escuche y repita.*

What day is it today?	It is Sunday.
What day is it tomorrow?	It is Monday.
What day is it the day after tomorrow?	It is Tuesday.
What's the day today?	It is Wednesday.
What's the day tomorrow?	It is Thursday.
What's the day after tomorrow?	It is Friday.

#### **What are the days of the week?**

They are: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday.

**What day is it today?  
What's the day today?**

#### **5. Para hablar del mes:**

*Escuche y repita.*

What month is it now?	It is January.
What month is it now?	It is February.
What month is it now?	It is March.
What month is it now?	It is April.
What month is it now?	It is May.
What month is it now?	It is June.
What month is it now?	It is July.
What month is it now?	It is August.
What month is it now?	It is September.
What month is it now?	It is October.
What month is it now?	It is November.
What month is it now?	It is December.

#### **What are the months of the year?**

They are: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November and December.

**What month is it now?  
What's the month?**

## 6. Para hablar de la fecha:

*Escuche y repita.*

What date is it today?      What's the date today?

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
				1st	2nd	3rd
4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th
11th	12th	13th	14th	15th	16th	17th
18th	19th	20th	21st	22nd	23rd	24th
25th	26th	27th	28th	29th	30th	31st

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31

*Escuche y repita.*

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| What date is it today? | It's Thursday (the) first.    |
| What date is it today? | It's Friday (the) second.     |
| What date is it today? | It's Saturday (the) third.    |
| What date is it today? | It's Sunday (the) fourth.     |
| What date is it today? | It's Monday (the) fifth.      |
| What date is it today? | It's Tuesday (the) sixth.     |
| What date is it today? | It's Wednesday (the) seventh. |
| What date is it today? | It's Thursday (the) eighth.   |
| What date is it today? | It's Friday (the) ninth.      |
| What date is it today? | It's Saturday (the) tenth.    |

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
one	two	three	four	five	six	seven	eight	nine	ten
once	twice	three times	four times	five times	six times	seven times	eight times	nine times	ten times
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
eleven	twelve	thirteen	fourteen	fifteen	sixteen	seventeen	eighteen	nineteen	twenty

***Escuche y repita.***

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| What's the date today? | It's Sunday eleven.      |
| What's the date today? | It's Monday twelve.      |
| What's the date today? | It's Tuesday thirteen.   |
| What's the date today? | It's Wednesday fourteen. |
| What's the date today? | It's Thursday fifteen.   |
| What's the date today? | It's Friday sixteen.     |
| What's the date today? | It's Saturday seventeen. |
| What's the date today? | It's Sunday eighteen.    |
| What's the date today? | It's Monday nineteen.    |
| What's the date today? | It's Tuesday twenty.     |

21	22	30	34	40	46	50	58	60	63
Twenty one	Twenty two	Thirty	Thirty four	Forty	Forty six	Fifty	Fifty eight	Sixty	Sixty three

70	75	80	87	90	99	100	101
Seventy	Seventy five	Eighty	Eighty seven	Ninety	Ninety nine	One hundred	One hundred and one

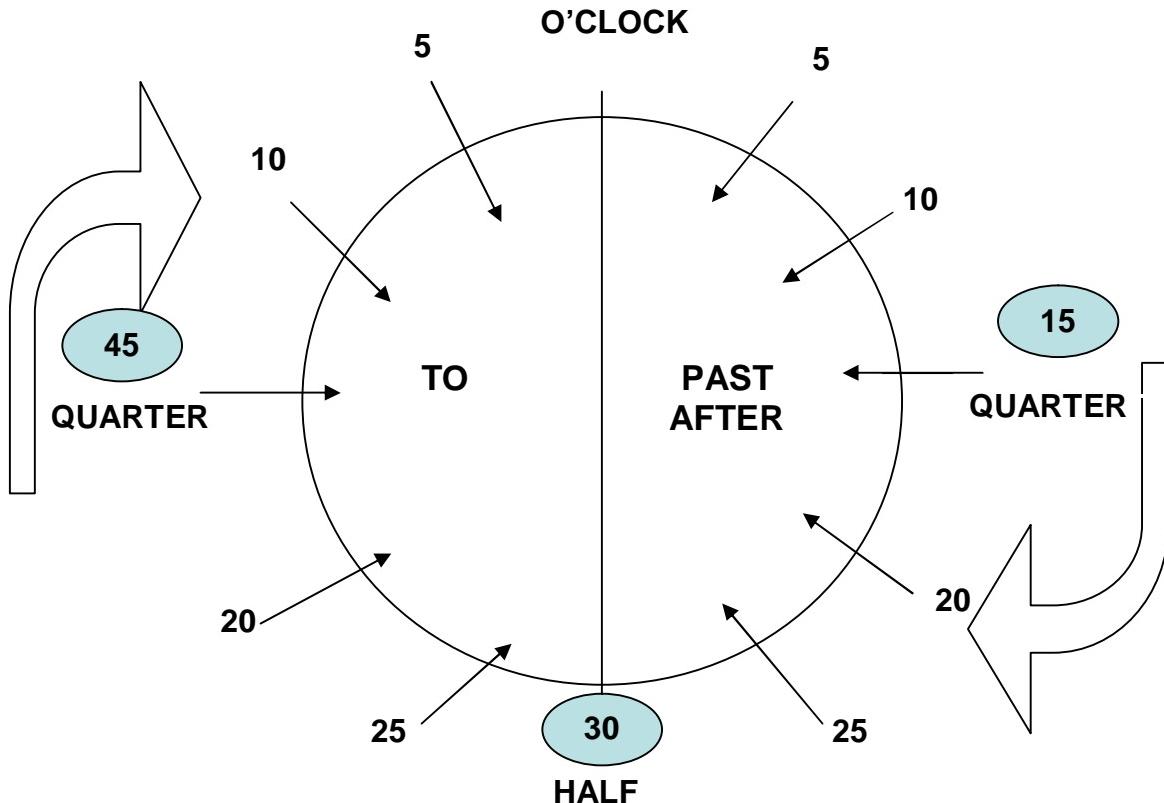
<b>What date is it today? What's the date today? What's the date? What date is it?</b>	<b>Day + number Month + number</b>
--	--

***Escuche y repita.***

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| Sunday 3rd.    | January 1st.   |
| Monday 15.     | February 7.    |
| Tuesday 7.     | March 2nd.     |
| Wednesday 2nd. | April 9.       |
| Thursday 1st.  | May 3rd.       |
| Friday 29.     | June 10.       |
| Saturday 27th. | July 4th.      |
| Sunday 4th.    | August 15.     |
| Monday 11.     | September 9th. |
| Friday 5th.    | October 30.    |
| Tuesday 25.    | November 28th. |
| Saturday 8th.  | December 1.    |

**Para hablar de la hora:**  
*Escuche y repita.*

## What time is it?



It's five past one.

It's ten past two.

It's a quarter past three.

It's twenty five to seven.

It's twenty to eight.

It's quarter to nine.

It's twelve o'clock.

It's one o'clock.

It's six o'clock.

It's ten o'clock.

It's three fifteen.

It's eight forty five.

It's midnight.

It's midday.

It's twenty past four.

It's twenty five past five.

It's half past six.

It's six thirty.

It's ten to ten.

It's five to eleven.

What time is it?  
What time is it now?

## 8. Para hablar de las estaciones del año:

*Escuche y repita.*

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| What season is it? | It is summer.        |
| What season is it? | It is autumn. (fall) |
| What season is it? | It is winter.        |
| What season is it? | It is spring.        |

### What are the seasons of the year?

They are: summer, autumn, winter and spring.

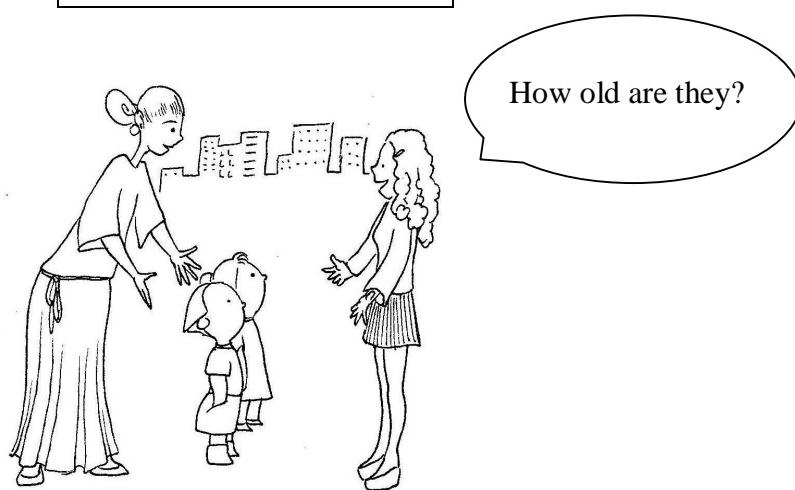
**What season is it now?  
What's the season?**

## 9. Para hablar de la edad de las personas:

*Escuche y repita.*

- |                                 |   |                              |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| How old are you?                | I am 43 years old.                        | I'm forty three.             |
| How old is he?                  | He is 30 years old.                       | He's thirty.                 |
| How old is she?                 | She is 15 years old.                      | She's fifteen.               |
| How old are they?               | They are 20 and 18 years old.             | They're twenty and eighteen. |
| How old is Luis?                | He is 12 years old.                       | He's twelve.                 |
| How old is Marta?               | She is 25 years old.                      | She's twenty five.           |
| How old are Felipe and Claudia? | Felipe is 35 and Claudia is 27 years old. |                              |

**How old are you?**



## 10. Para saber el costo de un producto:

*Escuche y repita.*

How much is it?	It is US\$20	It's US\$20
How much is it?	It is 400 €	It's 400 €
How much are they?	They are US\$150	They're US\$150

**How much is it?  
How much are they?**

## 11. Para hablar del estado de las personas:

*Escuche y repita.*

How are you?	I am hungry.	I'm hungry.
How is he?	He is thirsty.	He's thirsty.
How is she?	She is cold.	She's cold.
How are you? (pl.)	We are hot.	We're hot.
How are they?	They are tired.	They're tired.
How is Paulina?	She is bored.	She's bored.
How is Carlos?	He is angry.	He's angry.

**How are you?  
How are they?**

## 12. Para hablar del tiempo:

*Escuche y repita.*

What is the weather like?	It is sunny.	It's sunny.
What's the weather like?	It is windy.	It's windy.
What is the weather like?	It is hot.	It's hot.
What's the weather like?	It is cold.	It's cold.
What's the weather like?	It is rainy.	It's rainy.
What is the weather like?	It is warm.	It's warm.
What's the weather like?	It is cool.	It's cool.

**What is the weather like?  
What's the weather like?**

### **13. Para hablar del color:**

*Escuche y repita.*

What colour is it?	It is red.	It's red.
What colour is it?	It is blue.	It's blue.
What colour is it?	It is green.	It's green
What colour is it?	It is yellow.	It's yellow.
What color are they?	They are orange and brown.	They're orange and brown.
What color are they?	They are white and grey.	They're white and grey.
What color are they?	They are pink and purple.	They're pink and purple.
What colour are they?	They are black.	They're black.

**What colour is it?  
What color are they?  
What's the color?**

### **13. Para hablar de la ubicación:**

*Escuche y repita.*

Where is he?	He is under the table.	He's under the table.
Where is it?	It is on the table.	It's on the chair.
Where is it?	It is behind the tree.	It's behind the tree.
Where is she?	She is in front of the tree.	She's in front of the tree.
Where are they?	They are in the box.	They're in the box.
Where is she?	She is at the door.	She's at the door.

**Where is it?  
Where are they?  
Where is he?**

## 14. Otros usos:

### *Escuche y repita.*

What is the address?	What's the address?	45, Manchester Street.
What's his height?	His height is 5 ft 6 in. (1.68 m).	
What size is she?	She's medium.	
What's her weight?	Her weight is 165 lb. (75 kg).	
How tall is he?	He's 4 ft 3 in.	
How heavy is it?	It's 35 kilos.	
How far is it?	It's 3 kilometres far.	
How long is it?	It's one and a half metres.	
How big is it?	It's 90 square metres.	
How many are they?	They are fifteen people.	

**What is it?      Where is it?      When is it?      Who is it?      How much is it?**

**How is it?      Which is it?      Why is it?      How many are they?**

**How far is it?      How often is it?      How long is it?      How tall is it?**



## *¿Qué son los sustantivos?*

Los sustantivos son palabras que designan a una persona, animal, lugar o cosa.

**Los sustantivos** en inglés generalmente no varían de género. Es decir, sirven tanto para indicar el género masculino como el femenino:

Ejemplo:

This **student** is clever. (student puede usarse con sentido femenino o masculino).

My **teacher** is tall. (teacher puede usarse con sentido femenino o masculino).

Pero hay algunos sustantivos que adquieren un nombre totalmente distinto para cada género:

Ejemplos:

Masculino	Femenino	Masculino	Femenino
man	woman	father	mother
boy	girl	uncle	aunt
son	daughter	husband	wife
brother	sister	king	queen
nephew	niece	bull	cow

Y hay algunos femeninos que se forman con la terminación **-ess**:

Por ejemplo:

Masculino	Femenino
steward	stewardess
actor	actress
lion	lioness
prince	princess

Es importante saber que hay **sustantivos contables** y **sustantivos no contables**.

## *¿Cuáles son los sustantivos contables y los no contables?*

Los **sustantivos contables** son los que pueden llegar a tener una forma plural.

Esta forma plural por lo general sigue una constante pero hay casos en que se presentan plurales irregulares.

Los **sustantivos no contables** no tienen forma plural.

### Plurales de sustantivos contables regulares e irregulares

El plural de la mayoría de los sustantivos se forma agregando <b>-s</b>	door - doors bird - birds table - tables	chair - chairs book - books cup - cups
A los sustantivos que terminan con <b>-sh, -ch, -s, -z y -x</b> hay que agregarle <b>-es</b>	box - boxes dish - dishes watch - watches	bus - buses dress - dresses buzz - buzzes
A los nombres que terminan con una <b>consonante + y</b> se les quita la <b>-y</b> , y se reemplaza por <b>-ies</b> .	baby - babies city - cities family - families	story - stories butterfly - butterflies study - studies
Hay algunos sustantivos irregulares cuyo plural no termina en <b>-s</b> .	man - men woman - women child - children	foot - feet tooth - teeth mouse - mice goose - geese
A los sustantivos que terminan en <b>-o</b> hay que agregarle <b>-es</b> .	echo - echoes hero - heroes	potato - potatoes tomato - tomatoes
Hay otros sustantivos que terminan en <b>-o</b> a los que se les agrega sólo <b>-s</b> .	auto - autos piano - pianos kilo - kilos memo - memos	photo - photos video - videos zoo - zoos kangaroo - kangaroos
Hay algunos nombres que terminan en <b>-o</b> a los que se les puede agregar <b>-es</b> o la <b>-s</b> .	mosquito - mosquitoes / mosquitos tornado - tornadoes / tornados volcano - volcanoes / volcanos zero - zeroes / zeros	
A los sustantivos que terminan con <b>-f o -fe</b> hay que cambiarles las terminaciones por <b>-ves</b> .	life - lives shelf - shelves wolf - wolves half - halves	thief - thieves leaf - leaves knife - knives loaf - loaves
Hay otros sustantivos que terminan en <b>-f</b> a los cuales simplemente se les agrega la <b>-s</b> .	belief - beliefs chiefs - chiefs	cliff - cliffs roof - roofs
Hay algunos sustantivos que son iguales en singular y plural.	one fish - two fish one means - two means one species - two species	one sheep - two sheep one deer - two deer one series - two series
Hay sustantivos que provienen de otros idiomas que tienen	criterion - criteria crisis - crises phenomenon - phenomena	

plurales relacionados con el idioma de origen.	formula appendix basis crisis hypothesis thesis curriculum datum medium	- - - - - - - - -	<b>formulae / formulas</b> <b>appendices / appendixes</b> <b>bases</b> <b>crises</b> <b>hypotheses</b> <b>theses</b> <b>curricula</b> <b>data</b> <b>media</b>
--	---	---	--

Hay sustantivos como people, cattle, jeans, etc; solamente se pueden considerar como tercera persona plural (**they**).

Ejemplos:

**People prefer healthy food.**

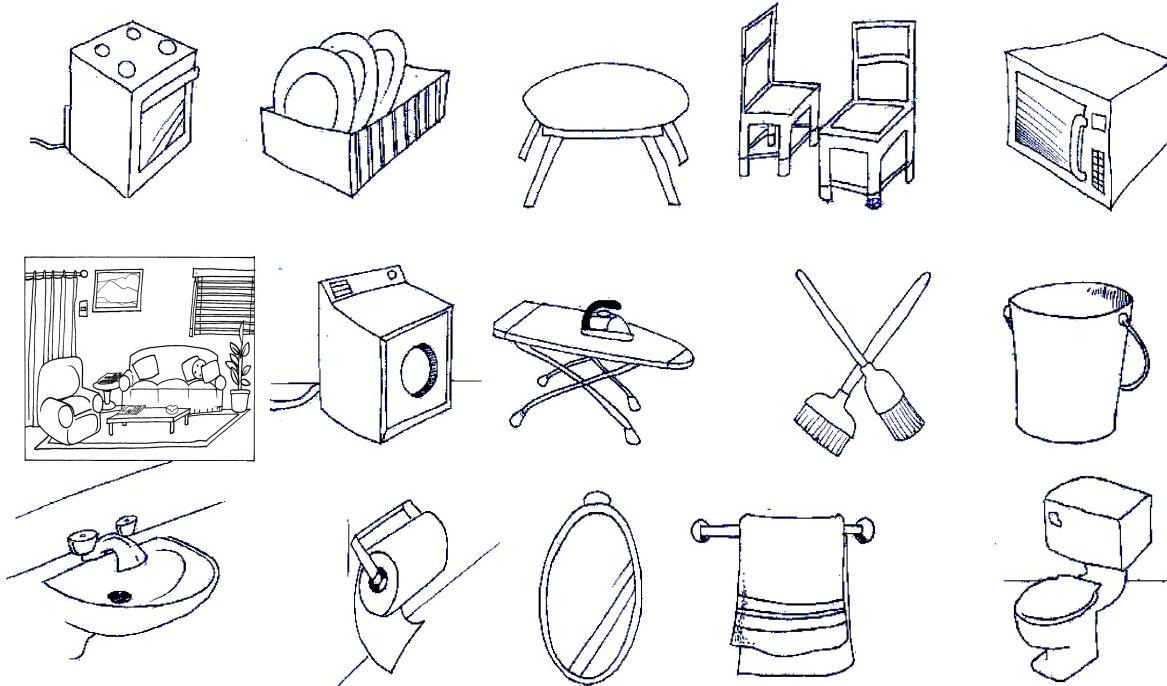
**Cattle are domestic animals.**

**The police usually come to this place in the evening.**

**Your jeans are too tight.**

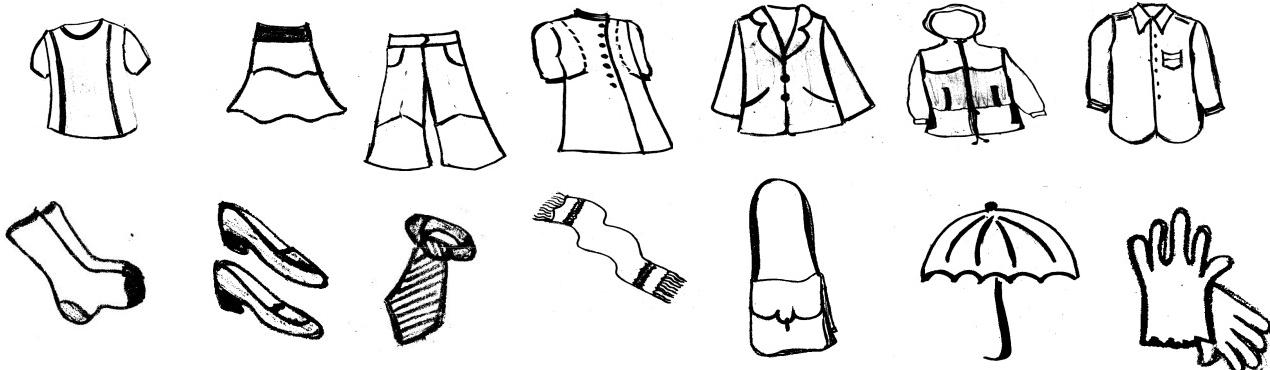
**My trousers are big.**

Solamente con los **sustantivos contables** podemos utilizar adjetivos numerales, por ejemplo, **one book**, **two books**, **three books**, etc.



## Lista de sustantivos no contables más comunes

<b>a) Grupos de cosas compuestos por ítems similares:</b>	baggage, clothing, equipment, food, fruit, furniture, garbage, hardware, jewelry, junk, luggage, machinery, mail, makeup, money/cash/change, postage, scenery, traffic, etc.
<b>b) Fluídos:</b>	water, coffee, tea, milk, oil, soup, gasoline, blood, etc.
<b>c) Sólidos:</b>	ice, bread, butter, cheese, meat, gold, iron, silver, glass, paper, wood, cotton, wool, etc.
<b>d) Gases:</b>	steam, air, oxygen, nitrogen, smoke, smog, pollution, etc.
<b>e) Partículas:</b>	rice, corn, dirt, dust, flour, grass, hair, pepper, salt, sand, sugar, wheat, etc
<b>f) Abstracciones:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- beauty, confidence, courage, education, enjoyment, fun, happiness, health, help, honesty, hospitality, importante, intelligence, justice, knowledge, laughter, luck, music, patience, peace, pride, progress, recreation, significance, sleep, truth, violence, wealth, , etc.</li> <li>- advice, information, news, evidence, proof, etc.</li> <li>- time, space, energy, etc.</li> <li>- homework, work, etc.</li> <li>- grammar, slang, vocabulary, etc.</li> </ul>
<b>g) Idiomas:</b>	Arabic, Chinese, English, Spanish, etc.
<b>h) Áreas de estudios:</b>	chemistry, engineering, history, literature, mathematics, psychology, etc.
<b>i) Recreación:</b>	baseball, soccer, tennis, chess, bridge, poker, etc.
<b>j) Actividades:</b>	driving, studying, swimming, travelling, walking y otros gerundios.
<b>k) Fenómenos naturales:</b>	weather, dew, fog, hail, heat, humidity, lightening, rain, sleet, snow, thunder, wind, darkness, light, sunshine, electricity, fire, gravity, etc.



## Expresiones utilizadas con sustantivos contables y no contables

Estas son algunas **expresiones cuantificadoras** que usamos con **sustantivos contables** y con **sustantivos no contables**: *a lot of, many, much, a few, a little, some, any*, el artículo indefinido *a/an*, y el artículo definido *the*.

Sustantivos Contables	Sustantivos Contables	Sustantivos No Contables	Sustantivos No Contables
<b>A lot of</b> houses.	<b>A few</b> oranges.	<b>A lot of</b> money.	<b>A little</b> time.
<b>A lot of</b> boxes.	<b>A</b> kilogram of meat.	<b>A lot of</b> cheese.	<b>A little</b> sugar.
<b>Many</b> sandwiches.	<b>A</b> bottle of water.	<b>Much</b> food.	<b>Some</b> meat.
<b>Many</b> books.	<b>A</b> bottle of wine.	<b>Much</b> information.	<b>Some</b> water.
<b>The</b> cigarettes.	<b>The</b> cars	<b>The</b> beer.	<b>The</b> water

### ¿Cuándo uso any y cuándo uso some?

Se usa *any* para preguntas y respuestas negativas y *some* para respuestas afirmativas.

*Any* y *some* significan: algo, algún, alguna, algunos, algunas, ningún, ninguna, ninguno, ningunas y ningunos.

### ¿Por qué a veces se usa a/an o the?

En inglés hay dos tipos de artículos: **indefinidos y definidos**.

Artículo indefinido *a/an* (un o una). Se usa solamente para referirse a **sustantivos contables**.

Cuando la palabra después del artículo *a/an* comienza con una **vocal o h muda** se usa *an* (un o una).

A book – A ruler – A pencil – An orange - An apple - An honest man.

**Excepciones:** Palabras que comienzan con sonido /j/.

Ejemplos: a yellow blouse, a young woman, a university, a European language, etc.

El artículo *a* no se usa con sustantivos en plural y a menudo se utiliza *some* cuando la información lo requiere.

<b>A book.</b>	<b>Some books.</b>	<b>A box.</b>	<b>Some boxes.</b>
<b>A girl.</b>	<b>Some girls.</b>	<b>A computer.</b>	<b>Some computers.</b>

El artículo definido *the* (el, la, los y las), se usa para identificar un sustantivo específico que puede ser contable o no contable (ver ejemplos).

**A book.** (Nos referimos a cualquier libro)    **The English book.** (Nos referimos a un libro en particular)

## *¿Cómo se indica posesión en inglés?*

Para indicar la **posesión** de algo se usan los **adjetivos posesivos**.  
En inglés los adjetivos posesivos no tienen género ni número.

Possessive Adjectives			
<b>My eye.</b>	<b>Our eyes.</b>	<b>My eyes.</b>	<b>Our eyes.</b>
<b>Your eye.</b>	<b>Your eye.</b>	<b>Your eyes.</b>	<b>Your eyes.</b>
<b>His eye.</b>	<b>Their eye.</b>	<b>His eyes.</b>	<b>Their eyes.</b>
<b>Her eye.</b>		<b>Her eyes.</b>	
<b>Its eye.</b>		<b>Its eyes.</b>	

Pero también se puede indicar posesión utilizando alguna de las siguientes formas:

1) Si hablamos de algo que alguien posee se le agrega **-'s (apóstrofo + s)** al nombre del poseedor:

Ejemplos:

**John's** house is new.

**The giant's** feet are enormous.

2) Si el sustantivo ya está en plural se le pone el **apóstrofo después de la s:**

Ejemplos:

The **boys'** names are Peter and Paul.

The **girls'** school is near.

Y cuando el nombre es un plural irregular y no termina en **s** se le agrega **'s:**

Ejemplos:

The **women's** toilet is on the left.

The **children's** book is interesting.

3) Cuando el sustantivo se refiere a una cosa y no a una persona se puede indicar posesión usando **of:**

Ejemplos:

They climb to the top **of** the mountain.

The doors **of** the house are open.

Persona (Singular)	's	Sally's house.
Personas (Plural)	s' 's	The girls'dresses. The women's names.
Cosa (s) (Singular o Plural)	....of....	The top <b>of</b> the tree.

También es muy común la unión de dos sustantivos sin ninguna partícula:

**A car wheel.**

The garden **fence**.

The **city tour**.

### *¿Qué es un adjetivo?*

**Los adjetivos** nos dicen algo de un sustantivo que puede ser una persona, lugar o cosa.

**El adjetivo** siempre se ubica antes que el nombre o sustantivo.

Ejemplos:

**A new car.**

An **interesting film**.

**A good student.**

Cuando se usa el verbo **to be** el adjetivo siempre se escribe después del verbo.

Ejemplos:

I am **tired**.

She is **French**.

You are **late**.

**Los adjetivos** no varían de género, es decir se escriben igual para el masculino y el femenino.

Ejemplos:

**A tall boy.**

The man is **angry**.

**A tall girl.**

The woman is **angry**.

Los adjetivos tampoco tienen singular o plural:

Ejemplos:

**A big house.**

**A grey car.**

It's **beautiful**.

Those two **big houses**.

Some **grey cars**.

They are **beautiful**.

También se pueden usar más de un adjetivo sin necesidad de emplear **and** entre ellos:

Ejemplos:

This town is a **beautiful little place**.

I have got three **new German books**.

## *¿Qué es un adjetivo comparativo?*

**Los adjetivos comparativos** se utilizan para poder comparar dos cosas entre sí.

1) Si el adjetivo tiene dos sílabas y termina en **-er**, **-le**, **-ow** o **-y** el comparativo se forma añadiendo la terminación **-er** al adjetivo usado.

clever	cleverer
simple	simpler
narrow	narrower
happy	happier

Ejemplos:

Sam is tall, but Bob is taller.

This box is small, but that box is smaller.

2) Para el resto de adjetivos compuestos de dos sílabas se antepone **more** al adjetivo:

stupid	<b>more</b> stupid
boring	<b>more</b> boring

Ejemplos:

This book is **more** boring.

That situation is **more** awful.

3) Cuando el adjetivo tiene tres o más sílabas el comparativo también se forma poniendo **more** delante del adjetivo:

dangerous	<b>more</b> dangerous
beautiful	<b>more</b> beautiful

Ejemplo:

Italian is difficult, but German is **more** difficult.

This movie is **more** interesting.

4) Para poder decir en qué se diferencian dos cosas entre sí, se debe utilizar el adjetivo comparativo correspondiente y la palabra **than** cuyo significado es que:

Ejemplo:

June is colder **than** April.

Today is warmer **than** yesterday.

Bill is clever **than** Gregory.

4) También se pueden realizar comparaciones utilizando **as + comparativo + as** o decir que una cosa no es como otra usando **not as + comparativo + as**:

Ejemplos:

Her house is **as narrow as** your house.  
His brother is **as smart as** your brother.  
Cars are **not as dangerous as** motorcycles.  
My homework is **not as difficult as** Maria's.

5) Cuando hacemos comparaciones no se puede usar **very** y en su lugar se debe *usar much, far more, very much, any, no, rather, a little and even*.

Ejemplos:

My sister is **much younger** than Christine.  
Spanish is a **far more difficult** than English.  
The play is **very much nicer**.  
Is your father **any better**?  
Your mother looks **no happier** than her sister.  
A Ferrari is **rather faster** than a Citroen.  
A Hyundai is a **little less expensive** than Mercedes Benz.  
His work is **even worse** than my work.

### *¿Qué es un adjetivo superlativo?*

**Los adjetivos superlativos** se utilizan para resaltar la cualidad de algo o de alguien entre tres o más cosas o personas.

1) En los adjetivos que tienen una o dos sílabas se debe anteponer **the** al adjetivo y agregarle la terminación **-est**.

Por ejemplo:

Mary is **the youngest** in the class.  
He's **the strongest** in the team.

2) Cuando el adjetivo tiene tres o más sílabas se le debe anteponer **the most**.

Por ejemplo:

This is **the most difficult** part of my life.  
The Mercedes Benz is **the most expensive** car.

Los adjetivos **bad, ill y good** son irregulares por lo tanto adoptan un comparativo y superlativo particular.

Adjectives	Comparatives	Superlatives
bad	worse	the worst
ill	worse	the worst
good	better	the best
far	further or farther	the furthest or farthest

Ejemplos:

The traffic noise in Concepción is **bad**, but it's **worse** in Santiago.

You are **good** playing tennis, but I am **better**.

All of you are **bad**, but Paul is **the worst**.

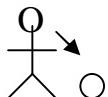
He is **the best** student in the class.

#### Cuadro de cambios ortográficos para formar los comparativos y superlativos:

big	bigger	the biggest
hot	hotter	the hottest
easy	easier	the easiest
happy	happier	the happiest
nice	nicer	the nicest
strange	stranger	the strangest

*¿Qué significan y cuándo se usan this, that, these y those como adjetivos demostrativos?*

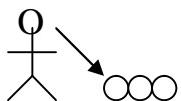
Se usa **this** (este, esta, esto) para indicar que una sola persona, animal o cosa está cerca del hablante.  
**This ball** is yellow.



Se usa **that** (ese, esa, eso) para indicar que una sola persona, animal o cosa no está cerca del hablante.  
**That ball** is blue.



Se usa **these** (estas, estos) para indicar que dos o más personas, animales o cosas están cerca del hablante.  
**These balls** are black and brown.



Se usa **those** (esas, esos) para indicar que dos o más personas, animales o cosas están lejos del hablante.  
**Those balls** are new.



## *¿Qué significan here y there?*

Se usan para indicar la cercanía o lejanía de una persona, animal o cosa con respecto a la persona hablante. **Here** (aquí) y **There** (allí, allá).



## EJERCICIOS

### *A. Cambie de singular a plural:*

That red apple is sweet. – This banana is good. – That grape is ripe. – This lemon is yellow. – That orange is big. – This peach is tasty. – That pear is green. – This plum is delicious. – That crab apple is small. – This pineapple is bitter. – That cherry is sweet. – This kiwi is excellent. – That watermelon is expensive. – This melon is juicy. – That strawberry is unripe. - This blackberry is huge. – That apricot is fantastic. – This coconut is exotic. –

### *B. Cambie de plural a singular:*

Those cabbages are fresh. – These carrots are great. – Those cauliflowers are small. – These onions are smelly. – Those peas are green. – These beans are tiny. – Those cucumbers are juicy. - These mushrooms are poisonous. – Those peas are fresh. – These potatoes are old. – Those olives are too small. – These nuts are expensive. – This asparagus is good. – These corn cobs are yellow. – Those zucchinis are delicious - Those green peppers are big.

### *C. Transforme las oraciones de los ejercicios A y B en preguntas.*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**D. Responda las preguntas de los ejercicios A y B con respuestas cortas (short answers).**

---

---

---

---

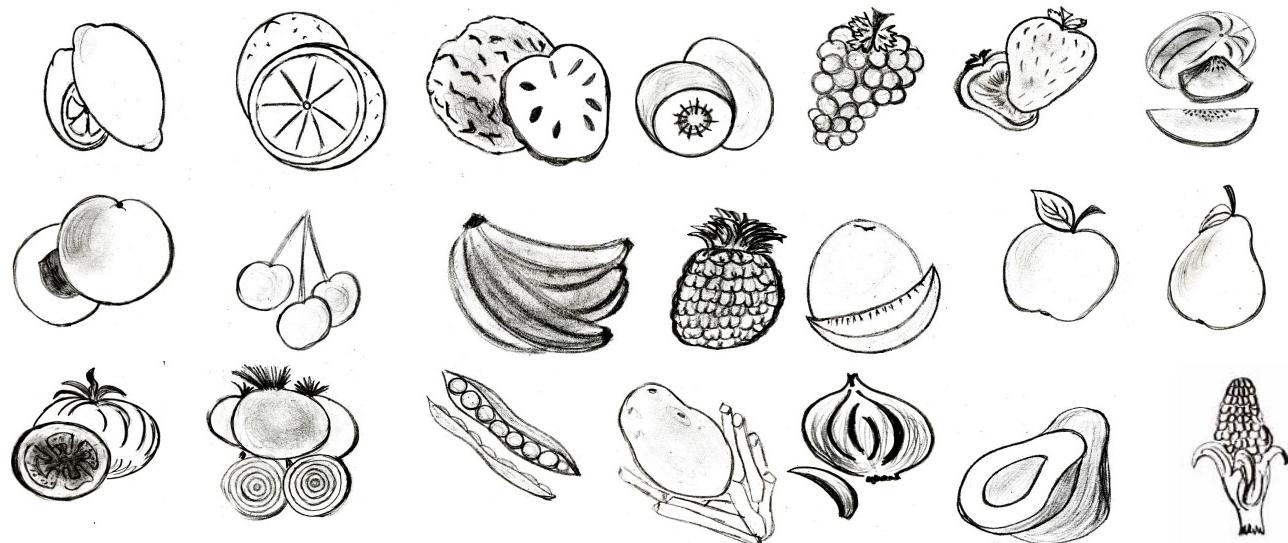
---

---

---

---

---



**Do you like .....?**

## EJERCICIOS

### Verb to be

#### A. Reemplaza las siguientes frases por sus respectivos pronombres personales:

George – Mary - The car – My ball – Mary and Joseph – Lyle, Steve and Rose – The dogs – The door – Your father – My sister – The flag – Its color – Phillip – Hans – My friend – Their shoes – Your friend – A book – An orange – The table – A cat – Your mother – Your classmates – My glasses – The airplane – An apple – The buildings – Her umbrella – My car – Its seats – Their backpack – Their bags – My dictionary – Her jewels – Andrew and I – Mary's computer – The children's bike – The girls'car – My friends' plants - My neighbours'car – Mr. Kessler's house – The park – The waiters' napkins - Howard and Bill – You and Mrs. Schetter – The air and the water – The clock's hands – The potatoes – Mary's hair – The cheese – The suburbs – The meals – Some glasses – The gloves – Supermarkets – The bottle – The teacher – A box of matches – His voice – My feet – This milk – Bill, Henry and I – My dog – The nurse – He and I – The waiter – Miss Capwell – Diane's motorbike – Tom and Nancy – My foot - My clothes – The piano – People – A box of chocolate - The Taylors – The dentist – Mrs. Long's backpack – His wife – Their house – Phil's car – The student's hands – The students' laptop – The other men – The other coin – Our car – Two pairs of shoes – Some salt – Some peaches – Many sandwiches – Much food – A few spoons – Some sugar - Its leaves – The honey – Two bottles of milk.- The little boy. – An apple.

#### B. Conteste las siguientes preguntas:

What's your name? - What is your family name? - What's your mother's name? – What is her name? – What is his surname? – What is your first name? – What is his last name? – Where are you from? – Where is Felipe from? – Where is your father from? – Where are they from? – Where are Jack and Allan from? – Where's Mrs. Long from? – How are you? – How are you today? – How are you this morning? – How is your mother? – How is your sister? – How are they? – How is the carpenter? – How is Henry? – How is Sue? - What's your brother's name? – What's your aunt's name? - What colour are the tomatoes? – What's Felipe's last name? – Where is he from? – What day is it today? – What month is it now? – What day is it tomorrow? – What day is the day after tomorrow? – Where are they from? – Where are Felipe and Luisa from? – What color is your shirt? – What color are your pants? – What color is her sweater? – What colour are their sneakers? – What time is it now? – When is your birthday? – How old are you? – How old is your friend? – How old is your sister? – How old is your brother? – What's the weather like today? – Where is your pencil? – Where are your books? Where is your friend's bag? – Where are your friends' bags? – Where is the church? – Where is your school? – When is his birthday? – When is Mary's birthday?

#### C. Transforme las siguientes oraciones en pregunta:

It is blue. - He is my brother. - They are friends. - Mary is there. - The boy is in the yard. - My friends are English.- The people are happy. – The car is yellow. - My sister's name is Joanna. - The children are in the gym.- We are in the library.- The supermarket is closed.- The window is open. – The post office is on the corner.- The church is grey.- She is my classmate.- They are Chilean.- We are Japanese.- The flag is clean.- My dress is dirty.- The boat is empty.- The bottle is full.- Supermarkets are closed.- I am in the forest.- The hill is too high.- The road is rough.- The post office is very near.- The bank is far.- The shirt is clean.- The pants are dirty.- My clothes are in the laundry.- The room is dark.- The kitchen is bright.- The avenue is long.- The river is short.- The mountains are near.- The lake is far.- The city is empty.- The door is black.- The gate is green.- He is in the bank.- She is in the toilet.- We are in the dining room. He and I are in the university. - You are happy. - He is tired. - My friend is handsome. - Her sister is bored. - They are married. - I am in the hotel. - The teacher is next to the window. - The cat is cute. – The meat is rare.

#### **D. Conteste con respuestas cortas afirmativas (*affirmative short answers*):**

Is she happy? - Are they tired? - Is he in the office? - Are they at the station? - Is my bag here? - Are the books in the shelf? - Are you bored? - Is my friend in the car? - Are my neighbors at home? - Is your dog happy? - Are they in the garden? - Is your backpack blue? - Are your friends American? - Is it green? - Are they white? - Are the eggs on the refrigerator? - Are my friends in the living room? - Is the laundry near? - Are the shoes on the repair shoe store? - Is the newspaper on the table? - Are my photocopies ready? - Is Santiago the capital of Chile? - Are we on the passengers' list? - Are they busy? - Is your friend in India? - Are they Italian? - Is it two o'clock, now? - Is she hungry? - Are they thirsty? - Are you sleepy? - Is the bicycle on the ground? - Is it Thursday tomorrow? - Is your birthday in March? - Are we happy today? - Is it difficult? - Is English easy? - Are they in the garden? - Is the girl in the school? - Are the doctors in a meeting? - Is the new nurse from China? - Are the workers in a break? - Are you a student? - Is his mother at home? - Is his uncle from Chile? - Is her daughter five years old? - Is his son a football player? - Are our friends on the plane? - Are your cousins tired? - Is your teacher nice? - Are carrots orange? - Are tomatoes red?

#### **E. Conteste con respuestas cortas (*negative short answers*):**

Is it Friday today? - Are you ready? - Is it finished? - Are they black? - Are your friends in the dining room? - Is the dog happy? - Are you interested? - Am I your friend? - Are we at the airport now? - Is the Chilean flag red, blue and green? - Is he a teacher? - Are you American? - Is your boss an engineer? - Are they tired? - Is the bank open? - Are the shoes purple? - Are you Finnish? - Are the children in the park? - Is it an orange? - Are they French? - Are you a student? - Are the teachers in the room? - Are the clothes clean? - Are the men with the manager? - Is he a carpenter? - Is your friend a soldier? - Is your mother a painter? - Are the children at the university? - Are the men in the factory? - Is the engineer in the construction? - Is Thomas an office employee? - Is he ready? - Are your parents Japanese? - Is she famous? - Is he at the school? - Are we on the bench? - Are they your children? - Are we crazy? - Is it hot? - Is he a student? - Am I a pilot? - Is he an artist? - Are you sad? - Is it warm? - Are the children inside the room? - Is it an elephant? - Are they monkeys? - Is it grey? - Are your shoes red? - Is the door open? - Are Jorge and Lucy at the window? - Are you bored? - Is his bedroom orange?

#### **F. Transforme las siguientes oraciones afirmativas en negativas:**

I am in Valparaíso. - You are tired. - We are five people. - She is tall. - He is blond. - They are happy. - We are beautiful. - She is very nice. - He is an architect. - They are honest. - She is far away. - The flowers are red. - The dog is small. - He is twenty years old. - They are bored. - The boat is big. - We are at school. - He is a good friend. - They are handsome. - It is on the table. - The windows are open. - The glass is broken. - Santiago is a port. - Tom Cruise is a singer. - You are a teacher. - He is a clown. - She is in the dinning room. - Ted and Williams are worried. - She is Mrs. Robinson. - I am fine. - Leonardo is from the United States. - It is Monday. - It is January. - It is old. - It is \$2.000. - He is hungry. - The beer is cold. - The house is red. - I am in the park. - It is next to the hospital. - They are in the bags. - Rosemary is smart. - Children are tiresome - I am old. - He is Catholic. - Dogs are friendly. - The car is modern. - The south of Chile is beautiful. - The doctor is the owner. - Your friends are intelligent. - It is \$1.890. - Anne is from Australia. - He is under the bridge. - He is at the University. - It is July 14<sup>th</sup>. - His weight is 58 kilos. - The street is wide. - The bank is closed.

## **G. Transforme las siguientes oraciones negativas en afirmativas:**

We are not happy. – They are not busy. – The car is not blue. – The shoes are not dirty. – The soup is not hot.  
– The door is not open. – The book is not big. – The thieves are not clever. – The musician is not worried.  
– The glasses are not broken. – The child is not lost. – We are not tired. – Jane is not hungry. – The manager  
is not in his office. – Dr. Forester is not in town. – The teachers are not bored. – The climber is not thirsty.  
– His teeth are not white. – The snow is not cold. – The eggs are not in the fridge. – The flight is not delayed.  
– Her cousin is not out of town. – Those books are not expensive. - The wedding is not cheap. – The horses  
are not black. – The guitar is not new. – The motorcycles are not old. – This fence is not red. – The place is  
not crowded. - The hats are not beautiful. – The bowl is not empty. – The dogs are not angry. – That movie  
is not interesting. – The window is not open. – This elephant is not dangerous. – The city is not healthy. -  
The knives are not sharp. – The women are not British. – The boss is not smart. – The mouse is not fast. -  
Your address is not right. – My parents are not here. -

## **H. Cambie las oraciones singulares a plurales:**

She is a writer. – I am fine. – He is from China. – The shoe is under the chair. – It is my book. – I am a good  
friend. – The tooth paste is in the bathroom. – My dog is in the park. – The shelf is next to Mary. – The jacket  
is from Argentina. – The bed is soft. – The television is on. – The country is big. - The river is cold. – The  
boy is in a hurry. – The teacher is angry. – The doctor is with the baby. – The restaurant is in the corner. –  
The mechanic is bored. – The park is ugly. – The pear is ripe. – She is from Brazil. – The bus is on the street.  
– The taxi is on the garage. – The ceremony is boring. – He is late for the meeting. – The child is ill. –The  
doctor is in the meeting. - The key is on the door. – The computer is broken. – The chicken is cold. – The  
carrot is very tasty. – The man is in the South. – The office is closed. - The juice is sour. – The student is  
tired. – The bathroom is dirty. – The kitchen is clean. – The bottle is empty. – The party is boring. - My  
friend is fat. – The house is a museum. – The pen is on the bed. – The glass is full. – Winter is cold. – The car  
is expensive. – Your sister is a taxi driver. – The cow is ill. – The teachers are from abroad. – This team is  
very good. – He is a looser. - My hand is dirty. – The child is polite. – The woman is a good mother. – The  
dolphin is in the swimming pool. – The lawyer is on trial. – Peter is a mechanic. – That student is a great  
student. – The policeman is on the corner. – A bird is on the balcony. – An orange is in the basket. – The city  
is crowded. – A friend is easy to lose. – The competition is difficult.

## **I. Cambie las oraciones plurales a singulares:**

They are in the train. – We are at the table. – The engineers are angry. – The backpacks are dirty. – The  
passengers are on the bus. – The lamps are expensive. – My friends are glad. – The stereos are cheap. – The  
artists are on the theater. – The bus drivers are in a meeting. – The banks are closed. – People are busy. – The  
planes are on the air. – The parties are on my house. – Children are bored. – They are in the hotel. – The  
guests are Japanese. – The students are intelligent. – The women are tired. – The windows are open. – The  
apples are red. – The cakes are sweet. – The boxes are heavy. – The tables are round. – The two men are old.  
– The cars are fast. – The children are noisy –Butterflies are colorful. – Crocodiles are dangerous. – The lions  
are wild. – The streets are crowded. – The dentists are happy. – Brad's cars are elegant. – The days are  
cloudy. – The lemons are bitter. – The girls are hungry.

## J. Cambie el sujeto de la oración por el pronombre que corresponda:

Mary and John are friends. – Pat is my husband. – Obama is American. – Charles is tired. – Christine and Michael are sleepy. – The car is fast. – The food is ready. – The house is big. – The doctor is at the hospital. – The cat is black. – The teacher is intelligent. – The French girl is tall. – The Capital City of Chile is Santiago. – The family is big. – The young boy is vegetarian. – Bryan and John are strong. – The building is huge. – The drugstore is behind the bookstore. – The bicycles are broken. – The table is new. – The shoes are old. – Men are self-confident. – Women are lovely. – Martin is quiet. – David is nice. – Sarah is a student. – Charles and Camilla are in France. – Karen and I are scared. – Buenos Aires is the Capital City of Argentina. – My backpack is yellow. – Danielle is bored. – Your friend Mary and I are from Canada. – Alison and Martha are lucky. – The house is very cold. – Ivan is in my house. – Hans is always right. – Mr. Murray and I are neighbors. – The nurse of my school is friend. – Lisa is talkative. – Bob is my brother. – Summer is great. – Marianne is blonde. – Linda and I are in the pub. – Pablo is tall but Karen is short. – Angelica and Bob are married. – Nina is my aunt. – The dog is under the bed. – The light is on. – The water of the shower is cold. – The stereo is off. – My bedroom is small. – The rug is too old. – The pencil and the notebook are on the desk.



## **There is y there are**

### **¿Qué significan there is y there are?**

**There is** y **there are** significan **hay**. En una oración siguen la misma mecánica del verbo **to be**. Formamos su pregunta invirtiéndolos y su negación agregando la partícula **not**. **There** actúa como sujeto y se considera un sustantivo. **There is** se utiliza con sustantivos en singular y sustantivos no contables. **There are** se usa con sustantivos en plural.

### **Uso de here is/are con sustantivos contables:**

Is there a bowl in the kitchen?  
Yes, there is.

Is there a dog at the front door?  
No, there isn't.

Is there a bank in this street?  
Yes, there is.

Is there a restaurant near here?  
No, there isn't.

Are there any bars around here?  
Yes, there are.

Are there elephants in the city zoo?  
No, there aren't.

Are there many policemen in the streets?  
Yes, there are.

Are there four towels in the bathroom?  
No, there aren't.

There is a book on the table  
There is an apple under the napkin.

There isn't a book on the table.  
There isn't an apple under the napkin.

There are two soldiers in the car.  
There are four goats in the yard.

There aren't two soldiers in the car.  
There aren't four goats in the yard.

### **Usos de there is con sustantivos no contables:**

Is there any milk in the fridge?  
Yes, there is some.  
No, there isn't any.

Is there any bread on the table?  
Yes, there is some.  
No, there isn't any.

Is there any cheese in the kitchen?  
Yes, there is some.  
No, there isn't any.

Is there any wine in the bottle?  
Yes, there is some.  
No, there isn't any.

There is blood on the sofa.  
There is cream in the coffee.

There isn't any blood on the sofa.  
There isn't any cream in the coffee.

## EJERCICIOS

### A. Cambie de singular a plural:

There is a hammer. – There is a mouse. – There is a lamp. – There is a cell phone. – There is a brush. – There is a pencil case. – There is a car. – There is a frame. – There is a hat. – There is a statue. – There is a door. – There is a television. – There is a coffee table. – There is a swimming pool. – There is a stereo. – There is a picture. There is a sofa. – There is a window. – There is a glass. – There is a knife. – There is a piano. - There is a pencil. - There is a banana. – There is a tie. – There is a telephone. – There is a sheet. - There is a candle. – There is a watch. – There is an ice cream. – There is a truck. – There is a boat. – There is a dog. – There is a chicken. – There is a ball. – There is a kettle. – There is an onion. - There is a marker. – There is a balloon. – There is a potato. - There is a mask. – There is a bird. – There is a tomato. – There is an umbrella. – There is a guitar.

### B. Cambie de plural a singular:

There are some snails. – There are two snakes. – There are some horses. – There are seven butterflies. – There are some hulks. – There are many whales. – There are some raspberries. – There are four strawberries. – There are some hearts. – There are seven bones. – There are three maps. – There are some cauliflowers. – There are many carrots. – There are some apples. — There are six cups. – There are some children. – There are eight boys. – There are six babies. – There are five computers. – There are some trees. – There are some flowers. – There are four needles. – There are many spoons. – There are three hats. - There are some mountains. – There are nine plates. – There are twenty tables. – There are some dresses. – There are twelve shoes. – There are some helicopters. – There are five pencils. – There are some coins. – There are eight restaurants. – There are some houses.

### C. Cambie las oraciones afirmativas a negativas:

There are some stars. – There is a towel. – There are many glasses. – There is a knife. – There are some women. – There are ten spoons. – There are five forks. – There is a microwave. – There is a sink. – There are nine chairs. – There is a stove. – There are some cups. – There are two pans. – There is a jar. – There is some bread. -There is a refrigerator. – There are some apples. – There is a pear. – There is a watermelon. – There is a lemon. – There are some strawberries. – There are ten blueberries. – There is some water. - There is a peach. - There are some grapes. – There is a potato. – There is a nut. – There are some pineapples. - There are nine tomatoes. – There is some soup. - There are some lettuces. – There are six beans. – There are five onions. – There is some money. - There is some beer. – There are three chairs. – There is some wine. – There are twelve eggs. – There is a dog. – There are twenty cows. - There are four monkeys. - There is a chicken. – There are seven pigs. – There is some time. -

### D. Cambie las oraciones negativas a afirmativas:

There aren't any pencil cases. – There isn't a notebook. – There aren't many erasers. – There isn't a pencil. - There aren't two pens. – There isn't any milk in the bottle. -There isn't a ruler. – There aren't many books. – There isn't a chair. – There aren't any whiteboards. – There isn't a table. – There isn't a shelf. – There aren't five sharpeners. - There isn't a printer. – There isn't any cream in the coffee. - There isn't a computer. – There aren't any backpacks. – There isn't a marker. – There aren't seven scissors. – There isn't a folder. – There isn't a compact disc. – There isn't any information. - There isn't a data show. - There aren't any sheets.

– There isn't a cardboard. – There aren't many paints. – There isn't a brush. – There aren't four classrooms. – There isn't a teacher. -There isn't a tie. – There isn't any flour. - There aren't nine shoes. – There isn't a t-shirt. – There aren't eleven jackets. – There isn't a skirt. – There aren't many pullovers. – There aren't any pants. – There aren't twelve socks. – There aren't many sneakers. – There isn't any snow in the street.

#### E. Conteste las preguntas con *affirmative short answers*:

Are there any stars in the sky? – Are there any clouds in the sky? – Are there any hearts on the picture? – Is there a bottle on the table? – Are there any pictures on the wall? – Is there a hat on the bed? – Is there any milk in the refrigerator? - Are there any stereos on the classroom? – Is there a television on the park? – Are there any laptops on the store? – Are there any lights on the house? – Is there a microphone on the school? – Are there any curtains on the bathroom? - Is there any gas in the air? - Are there any windows on the bus? - Is there a keyboard on the living room? – Is there a pillow on the bed? – Are there any houses for sale in this neighborhood? - Is there any money in your pocket? -Are there any palm trees in this forest? - Are there any bridges in the city? - Is there a map on the classroom? - Are there any drinks on the bar? – Is there any information on the paper? - Are there any cars on the street? – Is there a mirror on the bathroom? – Are there any children on the dance club? – Are there any angels on the hell? – Is there any music on the radio?

#### F. Conteste las preguntas con *negative short answers*:

Are there any eggs in the fridge? – Is there a car in the street? - Are there any plants in the garden? - Is there a ship in the beach? - Are there any students in the class? - Are there any cups on the table? – Is there a coin in your wallet? – Is there a farm around here? Is there any juice in the glass? – Are there any matches in your pocket? - Is there a horse in the park? – Is there any ice in the fridge? – Are there any sandwiches in the restaurant? – Is there a big dog? – Is there any meal in the kitchen? – Are there any artists in the meeting? – Is there an umbrella here? – Is there any salt on the pizza? – Are there any candles in the box? – Is there a party here? – Is there any air in the room? - Are there any cookies on the table? – Is there ice-cream for dessert? – Is there a storm outside? – Are there any clowns in the circus? – Is there a tiger in the show? – Is there any time to review? – Are there any penguins in the North Pole? – Is there a mistake on this paper? – Are there forty seats on this bus? - Is there a leopard in the picture?

**There is.....**

or

**There are.....**



**LESSON TWO**  
**Chart of tenses**  
**Regular and irregular verbs**  
**Cambios que sufre un infinitivo**

**Chart of Tenses:**

En el idioma inglés hay tres tiempos principales *present, past* and *future*.

A su vez, cada tiempo verbal se subdivide en cuatro categorías diferentes: *Simple, Continuous, Perfect* and *Perfect Continuous*.

Es decir tenemos doce tiempos verbales que son los siguientes:

<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Past Simple</b>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<b>Present Continuous</b>	<b>Past Continuous</b>	<b>Future Continuous</b>
<b>Present Perfect</b>	<b>Past Perfect</b>	<b>Future Perfect</b>
Present Perfect Continuous	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b>	<b>Future Perfect Continuous</b>

Estos tiempos verbales son muy simples porque con poca información podemos formar las diferentes conjugaciones. Un estudiante que domine nueve de estas conjugaciones puede considerarse en un nivel intermedio.

**Inquietudes del estudiante:**

***¿Qué más tengo que saber para poder llegar a este nivel?***

Hay **cinco** aspectos gramaticales fundamentales:

1. Conocer bien los pronombres personales.
2. Usar bien el verbo **to be**.
3. Transformar los infinitivos según el requerimiento.
4. Entender la dinámica de los verbos auxiliares.
5. Utilizar adecuadamente los verbos modales.

***¿Es esto suficiente?***

No, por supuesto que no. Tiene que preocuparse de incrementar su vocabulario usando todas las herramientas que tenga a su alcance (canciones, video clips, youtube, cine, etc.).

***¿Qué pasa con el resto de la gramática? No puedo conversar sólo con conjugaciones verbales.***

Claro que no. Su profesor irá paso a paso enseñándole los usos de sustantivos, artículos, adjetivos, pronombres, adverbios y conjunciones.

***¿Podré entender, podré hablar el idioma?***

Tiene razón. Desde las primeras clases comenzará a escuchar diálogos en inglés y también a reproducir con sus palabras lo que escuchas.

***¿Cuánto tiempo voy a necesitar para lograr esto?***

Si somos realistas y usted sigue nuestros consejos y sugerencias, en 100 horas podrá darse cuenta que puede entender si le hablan lento y al mismo tiempo podrá hacer entender sus ideas.

## Verbos regulares e irregulares

Los verbos en inglés se clasifican principalmente en verbos regulares y verbos irregulares. Son verbos regulares los que forman sus dos pasados agregando solamente la partícula **-ed** y son verbos irregulares aquellos que forman sus dos pasados de manera diferente.

### ¿Qué dos pasados?

El **Past Simple** y el **Past Participle**

<b>Infinitive (Infinitivo)</b>	<b>Past Simple (Pretérito indefinido)</b>	<b>Past Participle (Participio)</b>
<b>To walk</b> (caminar)	<b>walked</b> (caminé, -aste, -ó, -amos, -aron)	<b>walked</b> (caminado)
<b>To let</b> (permitir)	<b>let</b> (permití, -iste, ió, -imos, -ieron)	<b>let</b> (permitido)
<b>To eat</b> (comer)	<b>ate</b> (comí, -iste, -ió, -imos, ieron)	<b>eaten</b> (comido)

Los verbos regulares (tarjetas verdes) forman el **Past Simple** y el **Past Participle** agregando **-ed**.

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past Simple</b>	<b>Past Participle</b>
To walk	walked	walked

Cuando los verbos son irregulares (tarjetas naranjas) el **Past Simple** y el **Past Participle** no se forman agregando **-ed**.

- En algunos casos el **Past Simple** y el **Past Participle** son iguales.

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past Simple</b>	<b>Past Participle</b>
To put (poner)	put (puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusieron)	put (puesto)

- En otros casos el pasado simple y el pasado participio son diferentes.

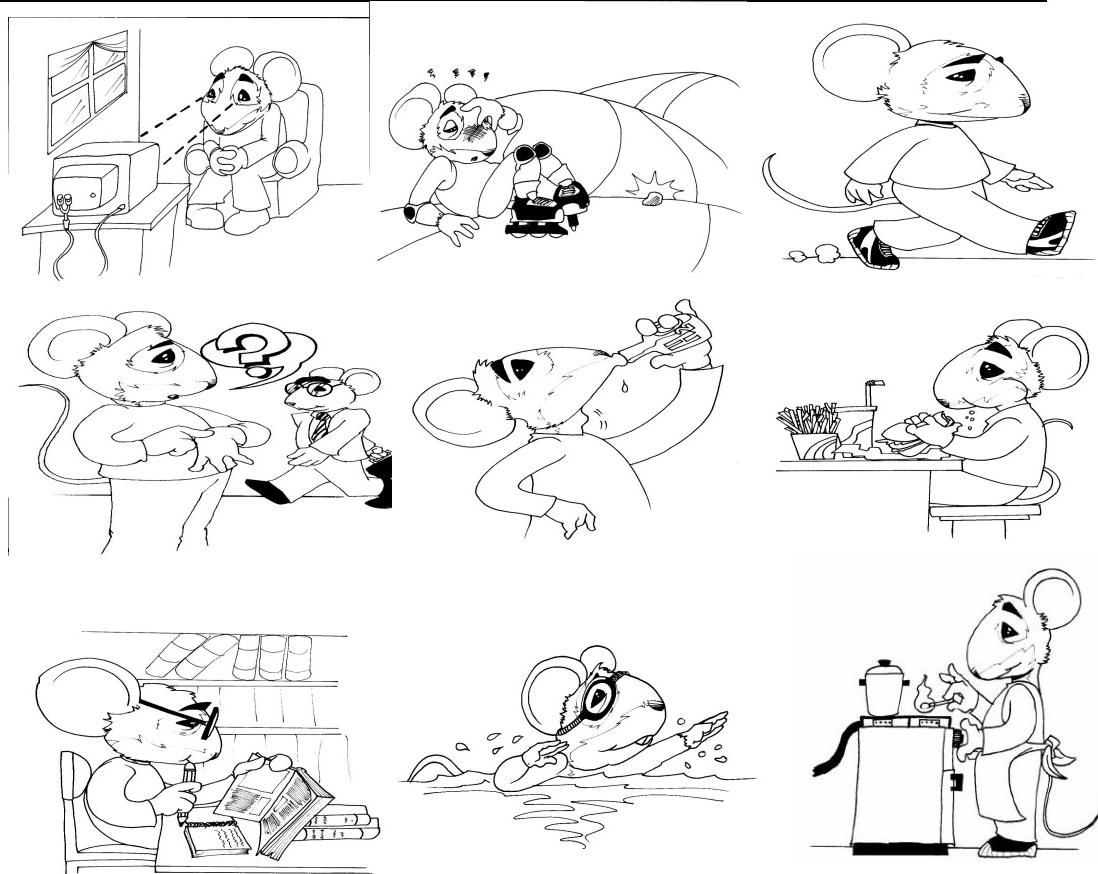
<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past Simple</b>	<b>Past Participle</b>
To eat (comer)	ate (comí, -iste, -ió, -imos, -ieron)	eaten (comido)

## Cambios que sufre un infinitivo

*¿Qué es lo que realmente tengo que saber de un infinitivo para poder completar mi cuadro de conjugaciones?*

Para poder completar mi cuadro de conjugaciones usted tiene que saber las cuatro formas que derivan de un infinitivo.

Infinitive	He/She/It	Gerund	Past simple	Past participle
To work	works	working	worked	worked
To cross	crosses	crossing	crossed	crossed
To do	does	doing	did	done
To study	studies	studying	studied	studied
To cut	cuts	cutting	cut	cut
To write	writes	writing	wrote	written
To fly	flies	flying	flew	flown



## TO LOOK

	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE			
SIMPLE	<p>-ed – irregulares</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>Did? didn't</td><td>I You He</td><td>We They</td></tr> </table> <p>I looked. Did you look? Yes, I did. No, he didn't.</p>	Did? didn't	I You He	We They	<p>-s      - es      -ies</p> <p>Do?  I-you-we      He-She-it they</p> <p>I look. He looks. Do you look? No, I don't.</p>	<p>Will ? won't</p> <p>I You They</p> <p>We He</p> <p>Will they look? Yes, they will. No, they won't.</p>
Did? didn't	I You He	We They				
CONTINUOUS	<u>CONTINUOUS</u>	<u>CONTINUOUS</u>	<u>CONTINUOUS</u>			
	<p>Past + gerund To be      -ing</p>	<p>Present + gerund To be      -ing</p>				
	<p>I was looking. You weren't looking. Were you looking? Yes, he was.</p>	<p>I am looking. You are not looking. Are you looking ? Is he looking?</p>				
PERFECT	<u>PERFECT</u>	<u>PERFECT</u>	<u>PERFECT</u>			
	<p>Past + past part. To have</p>	<p>Present + past part. To have</p>				
	<p>I had looked. He had looked. Had you looked? No, I hadn't.</p>	<p>I have looked. You have looked. Have you looked? You haven't looked.</p>				
PERFECT CONTINUOUS						

## TO WASH

PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE																					
<u>SIMPLE</u> -ed – irregulars <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Did?</b></td> <td>I    We</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>didn't</b></td> <td>You    They</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>He</td> </tr> </table> <p>I washed.          Did you wash?          Yes, I did.          No, he didn't.</p>	<b>Did?</b>	I    We	<b>didn't</b>	You    They		He	<u>SIMPLE</u> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>-s</td> <td>- es</td> <td>-ies</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Do?</b></td> <td><b>Does?</b></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>don't</b></td> <td><b>doesn't</b></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>I-you-we          they</p> <p>I wash.          He washes.          Do you wash?          No, I don't.</p>	-s	- es	-ies	<b>Do?</b>	<b>Does?</b>		<b>don't</b>	<b>doesn't</b>		<u>SIMPLE</u> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Will?</b></td> <td>I    We</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>won't</b></td> <td>You    They</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>He</td> </tr> </table> <p>Will they wash?          Yes, they will.          No, they won't.</p>	<b>Will?</b>	I    We	<b>won't</b>	You    They		He
<b>Did?</b>	I    We																						
<b>didn't</b>	You    They																						
	He																						
-s	- es	-ies																					
<b>Do?</b>	<b>Does?</b>																						
<b>don't</b>	<b>doesn't</b>																						
<b>Will?</b>	I    We																						
<b>won't</b>	You    They																						
	He																						
<u>CONTINUOUS</u> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Past + gerund</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>To be      -ing</b></td> </tr> </table> <p>I was washing.          You weren't washing.          Were you washing?          Yes, I was.</p>	<b>Past + gerund</b>	<b>To be      -ing</b>	<u>CONTINUOUS</u> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Present + gerund</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>To be      -ing</b></td> </tr> </table> <p>I am washing.          You are not washing.          Are you washing ?          Is he washing?          Yes, he is.</p>	<b>Present + gerund</b>	<b>To be      -ing</b>	<u>CONTINUOUS</u>																	
<b>Past + gerund</b>																							
<b>To be      -ing</b>																							
<b>Present + gerund</b>																							
<b>To be      -ing</b>																							
<u>PERFECT</u> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Past + past part.</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>To have</b></td> </tr> </table> <p>I had washed.          He had washed.          Had you washed?          No, I hadn't.</p>	<b>Past + past part.</b>	<b>To have</b>	<u>PERFECT</u> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Present + past part.</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>To have</b></td> </tr> </table> <p>I have washed.          You have washed.          Have you washed?          You haven't washed.</p>	<b>Present + past part.</b>	<b>To have</b>	<u>PERFECT</u>																	
<b>Past + past part.</b>																							
<b>To have</b>																							
<b>Present + past part.</b>																							
<b>To have</b>																							
<u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u>	<u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u>	<u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u>																					

## TO CRY

PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE											
<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b>  <b>-ed – irregulares</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Did? didn't</td> <td>I You He</td> <td>We They</td> </tr> </table> <p>I cried. Did you cry? Yes, I did. No, he didn't.</p>	Did? didn't	I You He	We They	<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>-s</td> <td>- es</td> <td>-ies</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Do? don't</td> <td>Does? doesn't</td> </tr> </table> <p>I-you-we they      He-She-it</p> <p>I cry. He cries. Do you cry? No, I don't.</p>	-s	- es	-ies	Do? don't	Does? doesn't	<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Will? won't</td> <td>I You He</td> <td>We They</td> </tr> </table> <p>Will they cry? Yes, they will. No, they won't.</p>	Will? won't	I You He	We They
Did? didn't	I You He	We They											
-s	- es	-ies											
Do? don't	Does? doesn't												
Will? won't	I You He	We They											
<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p> <p><b>Past + gerund</b> To be -ing</p> <p>I was crying. You weren't crying. Were you crying? Yes, he was.</p>	<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p> <p><b>Present + gerund</b> To be -ing</p> <p>I am crying. You are not crying. Are you crying? Is he crying?</p>	<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p>											
<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p> <p><b>Past + past part.</b> To have</p> <p>I had cried. He had cried. Had you cried? No, I hadn't.</p>	<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p> <p><b>Present + past part.</b> To have</p> <p>I have cried. You have cried. Have you cried? You haven't cried.</p>	<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p>											
<p><b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b></p>	<p><b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b></p>	<p><b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b></p>											

## TO STUDY

PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE											
<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b>  <b>-ed – irregulares</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Did? didn't</td> <td>I You He</td> <td>We They</td> </tr> </table> <p>I studied Did you study? Yes, I did. No, he didn't.</p>	Did? didn't	I You He	We They	<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>-s</td> <td>- es</td> <td>-ies</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Do? don't</td> <td>Does? doesn't</td> </tr> </table> <p>I-you-we they      He-She-it</p> <p>I study. He studies. Do you study? No, I don't.</p>	-s	- es	-ies	Do? don't	Does? doesn't	<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Will? won't</td> <td>I You He</td> <td>We They</td> </tr> </table> <p>Will they study? Yes, they will. No, they won't.</p>	Will? won't	I You He	We They
Did? didn't	I You He	We They											
-s	- es	-ies											
Do? don't	Does? doesn't												
Will? won't	I You He	We They											
<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Past + gerund To be -ing</td> </tr> </table> <p>I was studying. You weren't studying. Were you studying? Yes, he was.</p>	Past + gerund To be -ing	<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Present + gerund To be -ing</td> </tr> </table> <p>I am studying. You are not studying. Are you studying? Is he studying?</p>	Present + gerund To be -ing	<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p>									
Past + gerund To be -ing													
Present + gerund To be -ing													
<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Past + past part. To have</td> </tr> </table> <p>I had studied. He had studied. Had you studied? No, I hadn't.</p>	Past + past part. To have	<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Present + past part. To have</td> </tr> </table> <p>I have studied. You have studied. Have you studied? You haven't studied.</p>	Present + past part. To have	<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p>									
Past + past part. To have													
Present + past part. To have													
<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>	<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>	<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>											

## TO READ

PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE											
<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b>  <b>-ed – irregulares</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Did? didn't</td> <td>I You He</td> <td>We They</td> </tr> </table> <p>I read. Did you read? Yes, I did. No, he didn't.</p>	Did? didn't	I You He	We They	<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>-s</td> <td>- es</td> <td>-ies</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Do? don't</td> <td>Does? doesn't</td> </tr> </table> <p>I-you-we they</p> <p>I read. He reads Do you read? No, I don't.</p>	-s	- es	-ies	Do? don't	Does? doesn't	<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Will? won't</td> <td>I You He</td> <td>We They</td> </tr> </table> <p>Will they read? Yes, they will. No, they won't.</p>	Will? won't	I You He	We They
Did? didn't	I You He	We They											
-s	- es	-ies											
Do? don't	Does? doesn't												
Will? won't	I You He	We They											
<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Past + gerund To be -ing</td> </tr> </table> <p>I was reading. You weren't reading. Were you reading ? Yes, he was.</p>	Past + gerund To be -ing	<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Present + gerund To be -ing</td> </tr> </table> <p>I am reading. You are not reading. Are you reading ? Is he reading ?</p>	Present + gerund To be -ing	<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p>									
Past + gerund To be -ing													
Present + gerund To be -ing													
<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Past + past part. To have</td> </tr> </table> <p>I had read. He had read. Had you read? No, I hadn't.</p>	Past + past part. To have	<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Present + past part. To have</td> </tr> </table> <p>I have read. You have read. Have you read? You haven't read.</p>	Present + past part. To have	<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p>									
Past + past part. To have													
Present + past part. To have													
<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>	<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>	<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>											

## TO WRITE

PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE											
<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b>  <b>-ed – irregulares</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Did? didn't</td> <td>I You He</td> <td>We They</td> </tr> </table> <p>I wrote.      Did you write?      Yes, I did.      No, he didn't.</p>	Did? didn't	I You He	We They	<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>-s</td> <td>- es</td> <td>-ies</td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Do? don't</td> <td>Does? doesn't</td> </tr> </table> <p>I-you-we they              He-She-it</p> <p>I write.      He writes.      Do you write?      No, I don't.</p>	-s	- es	-ies	Do? don't	Does? doesn't	<p><b><u>SIMPLE</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Will? won't</td> <td>I You He</td> <td>We They</td> </tr> </table> <p>Will they write?      Yes, they will.      No, they won't.</p>	Will? won't	I You He	We They
Did? didn't	I You He	We They											
-s	- es	-ies											
Do? don't	Does? doesn't												
Will? won't	I You He	We They											
<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Past + gerund To be        -ing</td> </tr> </table> <p>I was writing      You weren't writing      Were you writing ?      Yes, he was.</p>	Past + gerund To be        -ing	<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Present + gerund To be        -ing</td> </tr> </table> <p>I am writing      You are not writing      Are you writing ?      Is he writing ?</p>	Present + gerund To be        -ing	<p><b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b></p>									
Past + gerund To be        -ing													
Present + gerund To be        -ing													
<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Past + past part. To have</td> </tr> </table> <p>I had written.      He had written.      Had you written?      No, I hadn't.</p>	Past + past part. To have	<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Present + past part. To have</td> </tr> </table> <p>I have written.      You have written.      Have you written ?      You haven't written.</p>	Present + past part. To have	<p><b><u>PERFECT</u></b></p>									
Past + past part. To have													
Present + past part. To have													
<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>	<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>	<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>											

### Conjugación comparativa del verbo Caminar

PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
<b><u>SIMPLE</u></b>  Yo caminé Yo estuve caminando	<b><u>SIMPLE</u></b>  Yo camino	<b><u>SIMPLE</u></b>  Yo caminaré
<b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b>  Yo caminaba Yo estaba caminando	<b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b>  Yo estoy caminando	<b><u>CONTINUOUS</u></b>
<b><u>PERFECT</u></b>  Yo había caminado	<b><u>PERFECT</u></b>  Yo he caminado	<b><u>PERFECT</u></b>
<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>	<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>	<b><u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u></b>

Completar cuadro de conjugaciones

PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
<u>SIMPLE</u>	<u>SIMPLE</u>	<u>SIMPLE</u>
<u>CONTINUOUS</u>	<u>CONTINUOUS</u>	<u>CONTINUOUS</u>
<u>PERFECT</u>	<u>PERFECT</u>	<u>PERFECT</u>
<u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u>	<u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u>	<u>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</u>

**LESSON THREE**  
**Present Simple**  
**Verbs to do, to go, to have and to have got**  
**Adverbs**  
**Pronouns**  
**Direct and Indirect Object**  
**Imperative**

*¿Cuándo se usa este tiempo verbal?*

1. Se usa **Present Simple** para hablar de lo que se hace habitualmente, con cierta frecuencia o todo el tiempo. Por eso con este tiempo verbal se utilizan muy a menudo los **adverbios de frecuencia**. *Always* (siempre) – *Usually* (generalmente) – *Often* (a menudo) – *Sometimes* (a veces) – *Seldom* (casi nunca) – *Never* (nunca).

I **always** play football on the weekends.  
He **usually** **reads** the newspaper at night.  
We **sometimes** **go** to Valparaíso.  
I **always** **have** coffee in the morning.

2. Se usa **Present Simple** para hablar de verdades o situaciones que son permanentes.

Lions **eat** meat.  
Winter **is** cold.  
Water **boils** at 100°C.  
People from Canada **speak** French and English.  
My parents **live** near Puerto Montt.  
I **go** to Valparaíso once a week. (twice, three times, four times a week, etc.).

3. Se usa **Present Simple** para referirse a eventos futuros que son parte de un calendario, horario o fecha establecida.

My husband arrives in Chile next week.  
My plane leaves at 3 o'clock.  
What time does the bus leave?  
Do you have an English class on Thursday morning?  
I start my new job on August the 1<sup>st</sup>.

*¿Qué tengo que saber del Present Simple?*

1. Primero debe recordar que el verbo **to be** es un **verbo diferente** por tanto las reglas que vamos a estudiar ahora se refieren a todos los verbos **excepto al verbo to be**.
2. En el **Present Simple** hay una regla de oro que nunca tiene que olvidar: todos los verbos cambian su infinitivo en la **tercera persona singular**.

## *¿Cómo cambian los infinitivos en Present Simple?*

Todos los infinitivos en *Present Simple* **cambian** en la tercera persona singular, es decir en **he, she e it**.

- A la **mayoría** de los **infinitivos** se les agrega **-s**
- A los verbos que terminan en **- ss, - sh, - ch, - x** y **o** agregamos **-es**
- Cuando los infinitivos terminan en **consonante + y** reemplazamos la **y** por **-ies**
- \*\*El verbo **to have** se conjuga de la siguiente manera: *I have, you have, he has, she has, it has, we have, you have y they have.*

*Ejemplos:*

Infinitive	Infinitive	Infinitive
<b>TO WALK</b> (caminar)	<b>TO CATCH</b> (atrapar, alcanzar)	<b>TO FLY</b> (volar)

Conjugaciones en **Present Simple** con sus respectivos cambios en **he – she - it** de acuerdo a las diferentes terminaciones de los infinitivos.

I walk You walk <b>He walks</b> <b>She walks</b> <b>It walks</b> We walk You walk They walk	I catch You catch <b>He catches</b> <b>She catches</b> <b>It catches</b> We catch You catch They catch	I fly You fly <b>He flies</b> <b>She flies</b> <b>It flies</b> We fly You fly They fly
--	---	---

## *¿Qué más tengo que saber de este tiempo verbal?*

Tiene que saber **preguntar, responder con respuestas cortas (short answer), responder con una oración completa (full sentence) y formar oraciones negativas.**

## *¿Cómo se formulan las preguntas?*

Para formular las preguntas en inglés necesitamos de unas palabras ayudantes que de ahora en adelante llamaremos **auxiliares**. Estos auxiliares en presente son **do** y **does**.

Se usa **do** para **I, you, we, they** y **does** para **he, she, it**.

**Do I play today?**

**Do you read books at night?**

**Does he stay at home today?**

**Does she live here?**

**Does** it work well?

**Do** you listen to the radio?

**Do** they cook chicken?

### *¿Qué significa responder con short answer y cómo se forma?*

La función de las respuestas cortas o **short answers**, es responder a la pregunta de manera afirmativa o negativa reemplazando al verbo de la pregunta.

Do I travel today?

**Yes, you do.**

Do I stop here?

**No, you don't.**

Do you answer the questions?

**Yes, I do.**

Do you work in a hotel?

**No, I don't.**

Does he like apples?

**Yes, he does.**

Does he check in today?

**No, he doesn't.**

Does she cook chicken?

**Yes, she does.**

Does she sign the papers?

**No, she doesn't.**

Do we check out this evening?

**Yes, you do.**

Do we fix the car?

**No, you don't.**

Do they look for an apartment?

**Yes, they do.**

Do they teach German?

**No, they don't.**

### *¿Qué significa responder con una oración completa o full sentence y cuándo se usa?*

Responder con **full sentence** significa entregar la información completa utilizando el verbo que aparece en la pregunta.

Do I **have** to go tomorrow?

Yes, you **have** to go tomorrow.

Do I **fly** with Peter?

No, you don't **fly** with Peter.

Do you **wait** for Samantha?

Yes, I **wait** for Samantha.

Do you usually **complain**?

No, I don't usually **complain**.

Does he **finish** the book?

Yes, he **finishes** the book.

Does he **smoke** cigars?

No, he doesn't **smoke** cigars.

Does she **call** Tom?

Yes, she **calls** Tom.

Does she **play** the piano today?

No, she doesn't **play** the piano today.

Does the battery **work**?

Yes, the battery **works**.

Does the car **run** fast?

No, the car doesn't **run** fast.

Where do they **work**?  
They **work** in an office.

When do they **come** back?  
They **come** back on Friday.

How much money does he **earn**?  
He doesn't **earn** much money.

What does your mother **do**?  
She **does** charity work in a hospital.

How does Mary feel?  
Mary **feels** very sad.

How long does it **take**?  
It **takes** two hours.

### *¿Qué significa formar oraciones negativas?*

Las oraciones negativas son lo contrario a las oraciones afirmativas. Niegan la acción interpretada por el verbo. Hay que tener cuidado porque simplemente son oraciones negativas y **no responden a preguntas**.

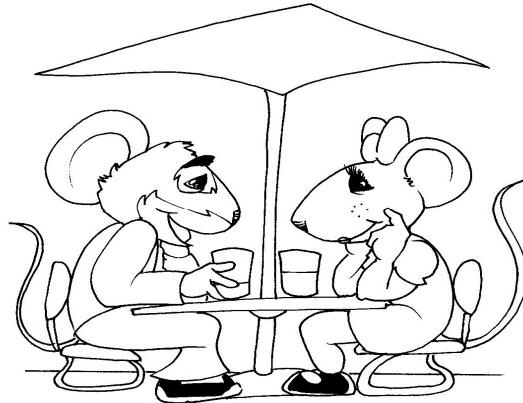
I like lemon juice.  
You arrive at six o'clock.  
He lives in Australia.  
She cleans her room.  
It eats dry food.  
We wash our car.  
They join the group.

I **don't like** lemon juice.  
You **don't arrive** at six o'clock.  
He **doesn't live** in Australia.  
She **doesn't clean** her room.  
It **doesn't eat** dry food.  
We **don't wash** our car.  
They **don't join** the group.

### **Does he take a nap every day?**



### **Do they usually drink wine?**



## Fórmula para hacer una pregunta:

(Wh) + Auxiliar + Pronombre Personal	+	Verbo en Infinitivo	+	Complemento	?
				Persona	
				Cosa	

<b>Auxiliares que se usan para hacer preguntas según el pronombre</b>		<b>Auxiliares que se usan para formar negaciones según el pronombre.</b>
<b>Does?</b> he – she - it		<b>doesn't</b> (does not) he – she - it
<b>Do?</b> I – you – we – they		<b>don't</b> (do not) I – you – we – they

*¿Hay algo más que deba saber sobre los auxiliares?*

Siempre tiene que tener presente que los auxiliares **no tienen significado**, sirven para:

- 1) Indicar el tiempo verbal en que está la oración.
- 2) Formular preguntas.
- 3) Construir oraciones negativas.
- 4) Contestar con *short answers* reemplazando al verbo de la pregunta.

Algo muy importante que tiene que tener en cuenta:

Cada vez que tenemos **un auxiliar** el verbo se mantiene en **infinitivo**.

Por favor vuelva a los ejemplos anteriores y analícelos.

### Verbos *to do, to go, to have y to have got*

#### Verbo *to do*

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I do.	I do not (I don't) do.	Do I do?
You do.	You do not (You don't) do.	Do you do?
He does.	He does not (He doesn't) do.	Does he do?
She does.	She does not (She doesn't) do.	Does she do?
It does.	It does not (It doesn't) do.	Does it do?
We do.	We do not (We don't) do.	Do we do?
You do.	You do not (You don't) do.	Do you do?
They do.	They do not (They don't) do.	Do they do?

Do you **do** the dishes?

Yes, I **do** the dishes.

No, I don't **do** the dishes.

Do you **do** the job?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

Does she **do** business?

Yes, she **does** the business.

No, she doesn't **do** the business.

Does she **do** the exercises?

Yes, she does.

No, she doesn't.

### Verbo *to go*

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I go.	I don't go.	Do I go?
You go.	You don't go.	Do you go?
He goes.	He doesn't go.	Does he go?
She goes.	She doesn't go.	Does she go?
It goes.	It doesn't go.	Does it go?
We go.	We don't go.	Do we go?
You go.	You don't go.	Do you go?
They go.	They don't go.	Do they go?

Do they **go** to bed often?

Yes, they **go** to bed.

No, they don't **go** to bed at 8.

Do they **go** to the cinema often?

Yes, they do.

No, they don't.

Does he **go** for a walk on friday?

Yes, he **goes** for a walk.

No, he doesn't **go** for a walk on friday.

Does she **go out** every Friday?

Yes, she does.

No, she doesn't.

### Verb To Have

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I have.	I do not. (I don't) have.	Do I have?
You have.	You do not. (You don't) have.	Do you have?
He has.	He does not. (He doesn't) have.	Does he have?
She has.	She does not. (She doesn't) have.	Does she have?
It has.	It does not, (It doesn't) have.	Does it have?
We have.	We do not. (We don't) have.	Do we have?
You have.	You do not (You don't) have.	Do you have?
They have.	They do not. (They don't) have.	Do they have?

Does she **have** money?

Yes, she **has** money.

No, she doesn't **have** money.

Does she always **have** breakfast?

Yes, she does.

No, she doesn't.

Do you **have** lunch at noon?

Yes, I **have** lunch at noon.

No, I don't **have** lunch at noon.

Do you sometimes **have** a drink?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

## Verbo *to have got*

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I have got.	I haven't got.	Have I got?
You have got.	You haven't got.	Have you got?
He has got.	He hasn't got.	Has he got?
She has got.	She hasn't got.	Has she got?
It has got.	It hasn't got.	Has it got?
We have got.	We haven't got.	Have we got?
You have got.	You haven't got.	Have you got?
They have got.	They haven't got.	Have they got?

**Has** the hotel **got** a garden?  
 Yes, it **has got** a garden.  
 No, it **hasn't got** a garden.

**Has** the house **got** a garage?  
 Yes, it has a garden.  
 No, it hasn't.

**Have** you **got** two brothers?  
 Yes, I **have got** two brothers.  
 No, I **haven't got** two brothers.

**Have** they **got** a lot of money?  
 Yes, they have.  
 No, they haven't.

Este verbo tiene el mismo significado que el ***to have***, pero siempre se usa en presente.

## Adverbs

### *¿Qué son los adverbios?*

Los adverbios se utilizan para explicar la manera, la frecuencia, el tiempo, la posición y la cantidad en que se realiza la acción de verbo.

### *¿Cuáles son los adverbios de frecuencia?*

Si se quiere expresar la frecuencia con que se realiza una acción se pueden usar los siguientes: **always**, **usually**, **often**, **sometimes**, **seldom**, **hardly ever** y **never**.

Ejemplos:

I **always** get up early (= siempre)  
 He **usually** reads a newspaper. (= generalmente)  
 She **often** comes by train. (= a menudo)  
 We **sometimes** play some rugby. (= a veces)  
 It **seldom** snows in this season. (= pocas veces)  
 He **hardly ever** knows the answers. (= casi nunca)  
 You **never** come late. (= nunca)

Los adverbios de frecuencia siempre se anteponen al verbo principal en las oraciones y en las preguntas, pero cuando se usa el verbo ***to be*** o el auxiliar ***do*** el adverbio va después del verbo.

Ejemplo:

I am **usually** early.

It doesn't **often** rains.

Does it **always** snow in winter?

Is she **usually** bored during her class?

### *¿Cuáles son los adverbios de modo?*

Para explicar la manera que alguien hace algo se pueden usar los **adverbios de modo**, los cuales se forman con el **adjetivo + ly**.

Si bien el adjetivo siempre se ubica antes del sustantivo, el adverbio de modo se ubica después del verbo.

Ejemplos:

Jeanette drives **slowly**.

We answer **quickly**.

Hay algunos adjetivos que pueden ser usados como adverbios: **early, fast, hard** y **late**.

He takes an **early** bus.

He arrives **early**.

We buy a **fast** car.

We drive **fast**.

I am doing a **hard** work.

I am working **hard**.

We watch the **late** movie.

The movie ends **late**.

Cuando el adjetivo termina en **-y** el adverbio se forma reemplazando ésta por **-i** antes de añadir **-ly**.

Ejemplos:

easy - **easily**

happy - **happily**

lucky - **luckily**

Nótese que para el adjetivo **good** el adverbio correspondiente es **well**.

She is a **good** tennis player. She plays tennis **well**.

### *¿Cuáles son los adverbios de tiempo?*

Para indicar cuándo se desarrolla una acción se utiliza los adverbios de tiempo: **immediately, now, soon, then, today** y **tomorrow**.

Ejemplos:

Let's ask him **immediately**.

I am leaving the house **now**.

He finishes **soon**.

The class is at ten, see you **then**.

We are flying **today**.

Answer me **tomorrow**.

### *¿Cuáles son los adverbios de lugar?*

Para señalar dónde ocurre una acción se ocupan los adverbios de lugar: **everywhere, here, nowhere, somewhere** y **there**.

Ejemplos:

There are students **everywhere**.

Your mother is **here**.

They go **nowhere**.

My keys are **somewhere**.

The telephone is **there**.

### *¿Cuáles son los adverbios de cantidad?*

Para indicar el grado de frío o de calor se usan algunos adverbios con adjetivos o adverbios de cantidad: **much, too, extremely, very, fairly, quite, rather, pretty enough, a bit y a little**.

Ejemplos:

40<sup>a</sup> C is **too much** hot / **extremely** hot.

35<sup>a</sup> C is **very** hot.

30<sup>a</sup> C is **rather / quite** hot.

27<sup>a</sup> C is **a bit / a little** hot.

23<sup>a</sup> C is hot **enough**.

20 C is **a bit / a little** cold.

13<sup>a</sup> C is **rather / quite** cold.

9<sup>a</sup> C is **very** cold.

3<sup>a</sup> C is **too much** cold / **extremely** cold.

Hay algunos adverbios que como los adjetivos tienen formas irregulares.

Adverbio	Comparativo	Superlativo
badly	worse	the worst
little	less	the least
well	better	the best

### *¿Cómo se usan fairly, quite, rather, pretty?*

Por ejemplo:

He speaks English **fairly** well. (Suficiente para sobrevivir).

He speaks English **quite** good. (Mejor que en el caso anterior).

He speaks English **rather** good. (Me ha sorprendido).

He speaks English **pretty** good. (Informal y equivale a *rather*)

1) Se usa **quite** para restarle fuerza a algunos adjetivos tales como: *cold, hot, big, small*.

Por ejemplo:

Today is **quite** cold.

The weather is **quite** hot.

The house is **quite** small.

Your car is **quite** big.

Pero también se puede usar de una manera positiva, es decir, para expresar que uno concuerda completa y absolutamente con algo.

You **quite** agree with them.

She is **quite** right.

It's **quite** fantastic!

He is **quite** exhausted.

2) Se utiliza **hardly + any** para decir casi nada o casi ninguno y **hardly + ever** para decir **casi nunca o rara vez**.

Ejemplos:

He has got **hardly any** money.

There are **hardly any** American people in France.

The boy **hardly ever** drives his car.

It **hardly ever** snows in Santiago.

### *¿Cómo se usan **too** y **enough**?*

1) Se utiliza **too + adjective** para expresar que la cualidad del adjetivo es mayor que si se usa el adjetivo solo.

Ejemplos:

They are eating **too fast**.

He is **too busy**.

This water is **too cold**.

2) **Enough** significa **suficiente** y puede ir después de un adjetivo o antes de un sustantivo.

Ejemplos:

You are old **enough** to know what to do.

He is not fat **enough** to go on a diet.

We have got **enough** time.

There isn't **enough** space to build a swimming pool.

### *¿Cuándo usamos **each** y **every**?*

1) Cuando queremos referirnos por separado a cada una de las personas o cosas que integran un grupo se usa **each** (cada).

Ejemplos:

**Each** student brings a present.

There are 30 children in **each** class.

2) Para hablar de los miembros de un grupo en conjunto se utiliza **every** (un todo).

Ejemplos:

**Every** house in the neighbourhood has the same front.

**Every** tree in that street is different.

El verbo que acompaña a **every** siempre va en singular.

Dependiendo de lo que se hable se pueden usar las siguientes formas en vez de **every**:

1) Para referirse a personas se utiliza **everybody / everyone**.

Ejemplo:

**Everybody** is late.

**Everyone** buys a souvenir.

2) Para hablar de cosas se emplea **everything**.

Ejemplo:

**Everything** is good.

**Everything** is ready.

3) Y para referirse a lugares se ocupa **everywhere**.

Ejemplo:

There are kids **everywhere**.

You find the information **everywhere**.

*¿Cuáles son los pronombres?*

**Los pronombres personales:**

Ya sabemos que el sujeto de una oración puede ser reemplazado por los respectivos **pronombres personales**:

**I** sing.

**You** sing.

**He** sings.

**She** sings.

**It** sings.

**We** sing.

**You** sing.

**They** sing.

Ejemplos:

Mary sings.  
She sings.

All the people help me get money.

They help me get money.

Your dog bites my kid.

It bites my kid.

### *¿Cuándo se usan los pronombres como complemento de un verbo?*

Hemos estudiado los pronombres personales que actúan como sujeto: **I, you, he, she, it, we, you y they**. Ahora vas a estudiar sus equivalentes cuando se utilizan no como sujeto, sino como complemento del verbo. Estas formas (**me, you, him, her, it, you y them**) pueden ir después de un verbo o de una preposición.

### *¿Complemento directo o indirecto?*

La cosa que es dada, comprada, enviada, etc. es el **objeto directo** en tanto que la persona que recibe o se beneficia de la cosa dada es el **objeto indirecto**.

1) El **objeto directo** de una oración puede ser reemplazado por su respectivo pronombre.

She <u>prepares</u> the dinner. Verb + direct object
---

She <u>prepares</u> it. Verb + direct object
---

Ejemplos:

I cook spaghetti.  
I cook it.

We read a lot of books.  
We read them.

2) Asimismo el **objeto indirecto** de una oración puede ser reemplazado por su respectivo pronombre.

He <u>gives</u> a book to Mary. Verb + indirect object
---

He <u>gives</u> a book to her Verb + indirect object
---

3) Cuando en una oración tenemos objeto directo y objeto indirecto, en la mayoría de los casos, el **objeto indirecto** se reemplaza y escribe después del objeto directo utilizando la preposición **for** o **to**.

Ejemplos:

He <u>gives</u> a book <b>to Mary.</b> Verb + <b>indirect object</b>
He gives <b>it</b> <b>to her.</b> <b>direct object</b> <b>indirect object</b>
He <u>gives</u> a book <b>to her</b> Verb + <b>indirect object</b>
He gives <b>it</b> <b>to her</b> <b>direct object</b> <b>indirect object</b>

4) Hay algunos verbos especiales con los cuales el pronombre que reemplaza al **objeto indirecto** se puede escribir después del verbo y antes que el objeto directo.

Estos verbos son los siguientes: *bet, bring, build, buy, cost, get, give, leave, lend, kick, make, offer, owe, pass, pay, play, post, promise, read, refuse, sell, send, show, sing, take, teach, tell, throw, wish and write.*

Ejemplos:

She sends a mail **to Sam.**

She sends **him** a mail.

He gives some flowers **to Leila.**

He gives **her** some flowers.

I buy a gift **for my mother.**

I buy **her** a gift.

Sin embargo, dicho orden de estructura es evitado cuando aparecen ambos objetos y la frase termina con **it** o **them**:

Ejemplo:

He gives **you the letter** (No *he gives you it*)

Send **them some reports.** (No *send them*)

### Pronombres Personales (complementos)

	<b>Pronombres Personales (complemento)</b>	<b>Significado</b>
<b>Singular</b>	me	mí, me -migo.
	you	ti, te, -tigo, usted, le lo, la
	him	lo, le, él (para personas de sexo masculino)
	her	la, le, ella (para personas de sexo femenino)
	it	lo, le, la, él ella, ello (para animales y cosas)
<b>Plural</b>	us	nos, nosotros(-as)
	you	os, vosotros(tras, ustedes, les, los, las
	them	les, los, las, ellos (-as)

Ejemplos:

**He loves me.**

**I love you.**

**She loves him.**

**We love her.**

**They love it.**

**You love us.**

**We love you.**

**I love them.**

These flowers are **for me**.

The letter is **from you**.

Felipe drives **after her**. (Lucile)

Happy Birthday **to you!**

She walks **behind them**. (people)

They sit **in front of you**.

The dog jumps **through it**. (ring)

The cat passes **under them**. (chairs)

### *¿Qué usos tienen this, that, these y those?*

En el capítulo anterior estudiamos los adjetivos demostrativos **this, that, these** y **those** que como adjetivos siempre van acompañando un sustantivo (persona, animal o cosa).

Ejemplos:

**This** child is very intelligent.

**That** book explains grammar very well.

**These** magazines have too many pictures.

**Those** horses run very fast.

Se puede usar **this, that, these** y **those** sin estar acompañados de un sustantivo, es decir, como **pronombres demostrativos**. En este caso principalmente se refieren a cosas. Sin embargo se pueden referir a personas cuando explicamos quiénes son éstas.

Ejemplos:

**This** is more useful than **that**.

**This** is my husband.

**That** keeps the water hotter.

**That's** a beautiful boy.

**These** hold ten litres.

**Those** are my brothers and sisters.

### *¿Cuáles son los pronombres posesivos?*

A diferencia de los adjetivos posesivos que siempre van acompañados de un sustantivo, los **pronombres posesivos** señalan pertenencia. Siempre van después del verbo y nunca se usan artículos con estos.

It's **mine**

That's **yours**.

This is **his**.

That's **hers**.

This is **its**.

These are **ours**.

These are **yours**.

Those are **theirs**.

Ejemplos:

This is **my book**.

These are **our houses**.

This is **mine**.

These are **ours**.

Is that his car?

Is this her ruler?

No, it's **mine**.

No, it is **his**.

Are those **your shoes**?

Are those **yours**?

Yes, they are.

No, they aren't.

## POSESIVOS

Pronombres Personales	Adjetivos Posesivos	Pronombres Posesivos
<b>I</b> Yo	<b>my ...</b> mi, mis	<b>Mine</b> mío(a), míos(as), el mío, la mía, los míos, las mías
<b>You</b> Tú / Usted	<b>your ...</b> tu, tus su, sus	<b>Yours</b> tuyo(a), tuyos(as), el tuyo, la tuyas, los tuyos, las tuyas, el suyo, la suya, los suyos, las suyas
<b>He</b> Él	<b>his ...</b> su, sus	<b>His</b> suyo(a), suyos(as), el suyo, la suya, los suyos, las suyas
<b>She</b> Ella	<b>her ...</b> su, sus	<b>Hers</b> suyo(a), suyos(as), el suyo, la suya, los suyos, las suyas
<b>It</b> Ello	<b>its ...</b> su, sus	<b>Its</b> suyo(a), suyos(as), el suyo, la suya, los suyos, las suyas
<b>We</b> Nosotros	<b>our ...</b> nuestro(a), nuestras(as)	<b>Ours</b> nuestro(a), nuestros(as), el(lo) nuestro, la nuestra, los nuestros, las nuestras
<b>You</b> Ustedes	<b>your ...</b> su, sus	<b>Yours</b> suyo(a), suyos(as), el suyo, la suya, los suyos, las suyas
<b>They</b> Ellos	<b>their ...</b> su, sus	<b>Theirs</b> suyo(a), suyos(as), el suyo, la suya, los suyos, las suyas

### *¿Cuáles son los pronombres reflexivos?*

Algunos verbos deben ser usados junto a los pronombres reflexivos según sea el sujeto que realiza la acción. Entre los verbos que frecuentemente se dicen reflexivos (-se reflexivo) destacan: *to cut yourself, to hurt yourself, to kill yourself, to behave yourself, to burn yourself, to look after yourself, to enjoy yourself.* Hay que tener en cuenta que cuando los pronombres se presentan en singular el reflexivo termina con *self*. En tanto que si los pronombres aparecen en plural el reflexivo termina con *selves*.

I hurt **myself**.

You hurt **yourself**.

He hurts **himself**.

She hurts **herself**.

It hurts **itself**.

We hurt **ourselves**.

You hurt **yourselves**.

They hurt **themselves**.

Ejemplo:

I cut my nails **myself**.  
Children don't look after **themselves**.  
You enjoy **yourself**.

### *¿Cuáles son los pronombres indefinidos?*

Son aquellos pronombres que no tienen una persona definida y que se usan para hablar sobre la gente en general, incluyendo la persona que está hablando o escuchando.

Ellos son:

**One** (uno)  
**Oneself** (uno mismo, a sí mismo)  
**One's** (de uno)

Ejemplos:

**One** makes many things to become popular. (Significa **uno** y cumple la función de sujeto)  
He talks to **one** like a judge. (Significa **a uno** y cumple la función de complemento)  
Making better **oneself** is the only way to achieve the success. (Significa **uno mismo** y cumple la función de pronombre reflexivo)  
It's difficult to keep **one's** personality when you are very rich. (Significa **de uno** y cumple la función de genitivo)

### *¿Cuándo se usa one / ones?*

Cuando estamos hablando de personas o cosas y no queremos repetir el nombre se usa **one**.

Ejemplos:

I love that man; **the man** on the corner.  
I love that man; **the one** on the corner.

A box, please; a small **one**.                            I want a new bicycle. That **one**.

Si estamos hablando de dos o más personas o cosas se usa **ones**.

Ejemplos:

- I like those pants.  
- Which **ones**?  
- The blue **ones** over there.

I love cats, especially the Persian **ones**.

## *¿Cuáles son los pronombres interrogativos?*

Para realizar las preguntas se pueden utilizar los siguientes **pronombres interrogativos**:

<b>When</b>	Para preguntar por el tiempo cronológico.
<b>Who</b>	Para preguntar por personas.
<b>Where</b>	Para preguntar por lugares o posiciones.
<b>How</b>	Para preguntar la manera de hacer algo.
<b>Why</b>	Para conocer la razón de algo.
<b>What</b>	Para preguntar por personas o cosas.
<b>Which</b>	Por preguntar por personas o cosas cuando las alternativas son limitadas.
<b>Whose</b>	Para saber quién es el dueño de algo.

Ejemplos:

<b>When</b> does the film end?	
<b>Who</b> is coming?	<b>Who</b> (femenino / masculino, singular / plural)
<b>Who</b> are those people?	
<b>Where</b> do you live?	
<b>How</b> old are you?	
<b>Why</b> are you here?	
<b>What's</b> your address?	
<b>Which</b> sport do you prefer?	
<b>Whose</b> bicycle is this?	

## *¿Cuáles son los pronombres relativos?*

Cuando se quiere unir dos oraciones en una se pueden usar **los pronombres relativos**.

Para reemplazar animales o cosas se usa **which** y para las personas **who**.

Ejemplos:

There are a lot of doors open. The white door is closed.

There is a white door **which** is closed.

This is the doctor. The doctor always asks me for help.

This is the doctor **who** always asks me for help.

También se puede usar **that** en lugar de **who** o **which**.

Sirve tanto para cosas o personas y no varía en el género ni en el número, es decir, puede referirse tanto a un masculino como a un femenino, a un singular como a un plural.

Ejemplos:

That's the boy **that** has my wallet.  
I know the girl **that** opens the store.  
Those are the pants **that** I want to buy.

### *¿Cómo se usa el imperativo? (Imperative)*

El **imperativo** se usa para dar órdenes, instrucciones o consejos y también para hacer invitaciones y advertencias.

### *¿Cómo se forma el imperativo?*

El **imperativo** se forma con la forma simple de un verbo, es decir, el verbo en infinitivo sin la preposición **to**.  
Este tiempo no sufre variaciones del singular al plural.

1) Para dar órdenes, instrucciones y advertencias:

Ejemplos:

**Do it!**  
**Do** obey!  
**Open** the window!  
**Run** away!  
**Add** 2 teaspoons of milk.  
**Pour** hot chocolate into cup.  
You **listen** to me!  
**Avoid** them!

Para pedirle a alguien que no haga algo se usa **don't + verbo en infinitivo**.

Ejemplos:

**Don't** move!  
**Don't do** that again!  
**Don't throw** it!  
**Don't use** the radio without my permission!  
**Don't feel** bad!

2) Para dar consejos, hacer invitaciones y dar sugerencias:

Ejemplos:

**Let's go!**  
**Let's no give up!**  
**Join us!**  
**Seat** beside us!  
**Try** to do it better!

Para pedir algo de una manera más cortés se puede poner **please** al principio o al final de la oración.  
Ejemplos:

**Please, bring** the book!

**Cross** the street right now, **please!**

## Ejercicios

### Present Simple

#### **A. Desarrolle las siguientes conjugaciones según corresponda:**

I (start)	She (accept)	We (stop)	She (cry)
He (start)	You and I (want)	She (stop)	They (drink)
We (repeat)	She (want)	I (do)	He (drink)
He (repeat)	We (like)	He (do)	I (go)
You (live)	It (like)	They (do)	He (go)
She (live)	I (walk)	He (do)	We (watch TV)
They (cut)	He (walk)	We (charge)	She (watch TV)
She (cut)	They (work)	She (charge)	We (have)
We (study)	She (work)	You (try)	He (have)
He (study)	You (give)	He (try)	You (fix)
You (enter)	It (give)	They (cross)	She (fix)
It (enter)	I (wash)	He (cross)	They (finish)
They (look for)	He (wash)	You (look)	She (finish)
She (look for)	They (pass)	She (look)	They (touch)
I (accept)	She (pass)	We (cry)	He (touch)

My friends (watch TV).

The doctor (sit) here.

This milk (taste) bad.

His voice (sound) nice.

Shoes (cost) \$15.000.

My teacher (speak) loudly.

My friend (watch TV).

The paper (have) a hole in it.

This pencil (write) well.

Her sisters (live) here.

Your cookies (taste) very good.

They (cook) with butter.

My dog (sleep) on the sofa.

Henry (get) up late.

Classes (begin) al 10 o'clock.

The store (open) al nine.

Those guests (need) passports.

Mary (look) very healthy.

That restaurant (serve) good food.

The child (dance) every day.

#### **B. Reemplace al sujeto de la oración y conjúguelo de acuerdo a la información dada:**

Peter and John arrive at 9:00. (**She**) – We wash our clothes every week (**The washing machine**) - They sing romantic songs. (**He**) - I say the correct answer. (**She**) - The chairs cost a lot of money. (**The chair**) – He holds the ball. (**Kate and John**) – Patrick and Lisa send the package. (**He**) – The players lose the game. (**Charles**) – My cat hides under the bed. (**They**) – Mary and I spend a lot of time in front of the computer. (**Mary**) – People touch the grass with their hands (**The man**) - The thieves steal the house. (**He**) – He doesn't understand the lesson. (**Peter and I**) – Paul and Mark meet at the University. (**Holly**) – My friend learns English. (**My friends**) – Natalia and Gisselle always catch a cold in winter. (**Daniela**) – Our classmates cross the bridge at 9 o'clock. (**Phillipe**) - Dogs and cats fight every day. (**It**) – He drinks water every morning. (**The teacher**) – I usually watch TV in the morning (**The woman**) - Carla knows the answer. (**You**) – Anna and Sarah bring the food. (**John**) – Charles takes pictures. (**They**) – The classes begin at 10 o'clock. (**It**) –

Helicopters fly really high. (**It**) – We do our homework every evening. (**Louis**) – They read English books. (**He**) – My friend Julie always hears a strong noise. (**My neighbour**) – They find the treasure. (**Oliver**) – The puppies cry at night (**The baby cat**) - My telephone rings all day long. (**Her telephone**) – Tamara and Nikolas finish their test. (**My aunt**) – I see people on the street. (**She**) –Forest and Michael study English. (**Katy**) –The teacher teaches English. (**I**) – You fix the leak (**My friend**) – We try Thai food (**The cook**) - The twins have a birthday party. (**Alexandra**) – I go to a party. (**He**)

### **C. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative short answers:**

Do you cry? – Does the weather change? – Does the party start at 9:00? – Does Martha ever move her car? – Do Peter and George sign the contracts? – Do Robert and I reserve the rooms? – Does Karen allow you to go inside her house? – Do you accept the terms? – Do they hire the new employees? –Does John clean the table? – Do we fly tomorrow? (two answers) – Does Peter call you? – Do I join the group? – Does Catalina try hard? – Do Mary, Kate and I plan these parties? (two answers) – Do Peter and Mary play soccer? – Does Charles lift the cup? – Do they cross the street? – Do you cook lunch? – Does Michael need a new car? – Do you and Sara answer the questions? – Does Adam finish work? – Do you open the window? – Does Oliver travel by plane? – Do you like beer? – Does Michelle work in her office? – Do you and Daniel study English? – Does Philip wait for you? – Do you close the door at night? - Does Christine include everything in the report? - Does Karla talk to Mark? – Do you live in Chile? – Does Anne enjoy watching television? - Does Robert stay at home? – Do you complain at the store? – Do you calculate the distance? – Do George and I prepare dinner? – Do we smoke too much at night? (two answers) – Does the electrician fix the lamp? – Do Martin and Sebastian listen to rock music? – Does Amy decide her future? – Do you look at the pictures? – Does Linda love Joseph? – Do you walk on the beach? – Does Marlene want a new apartment? – Do I watch too much television? – Does the bus stop here? – Does Andrew wash the car? – Do Charly and Ross visit their grandparents? – Do you understand the lesson? – Does Madonna sing pop music? – Do they build that building? – Do you think about your father? – Do you play today? – Does Katherine run on the park? – Do we drive our cars? – Do I teach English? –

### **D. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con negative short answers:**

Do you understand French? – Does Leonardo Di Caprio sing? – Does Karla think in English? – Do we pay with credit cards? – Do you teach English? – Do Brittney and Justin sit on the street? – Does Jake dream with ghosts? – Do we draw as Van Gogh? (two answers) – Do people wear boots in summer? – Does Mark buy cars everyday? – Do you eat frogs? - Do we leave our bags on the ground? – Do Peter and Mary ride horses every weekend? – Do policemen shoot guns on the park? – Does Nina break the windows? – Do you and your friend cook your lunch? – Does Martin build the house alone? - Do you keep your cat on your backpack? – Does Sarah hit you? – Does George hurt you? - Do Mary and Marlene smell gas? – Do you charge your cell phone once a month? – Does John spend a lot of time in the computer? - Does Angelica lose her keys every day? – Does Peter hide your money? - Do your grandmother and grandfather send presents every week? – Does Christine hold an elephant? – Do pencils cost a lot of money? – Does Louise say swearwords? - Do children light cigarettes? – Do you meet your friends at the office? – Do you learn German? – Do Linda and Stephanie catch birds? – Do women fight on the bank? – Do you drink vinegar? – Do people fall into the volcano? – Do you drive a big truck? – Do babies run fast? – Do you see people's heart? – Does Anne lend you her car? – Does the telephone usually ring? – Do you throw money away? – Do you choose your parents? (two answers) – Do we write on this table? (two answers)– Does Sharon take the train to work? – Do Pablo and Christopher bring cakes for lunch? – Do Peter, you and I leave work at 11 o'clock? – Do Peter, John and I arrive at 11 o'clock? (two answers).

#### **E. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative full answers:**

Do you speak English? – Do they try this new drink? – Does Mary have that room? – Do Peter and I have to sign this document? – Do they clean the room every day? – Does the doctor visit Robert tomorrow? – Do the children learn fast? – Does Sophie touch the flowers? – Do the men say the truth in front of the judge? – Does the nurse put some medicine in the drawer? – Do the students read English history? – Does the puppy sleep all day? Does he usually watch TV? – Do you often burn your dinner? - Do Mary and Peter tell lies? - Do you sell your computer? – Does Christine wash the dishes? – Do you come to classes today? - Do you smell that? – Does the baby cross the street alone? Do you dream about Anne? – Does the teacher teach English spelling? - Do you see your parents on weekends? – Do we look for the address? (two answers) – Does Michelle listen to classical music? – Do you do your homework? – Do you know the answer? – Do children drink milk? – Do you catch the ball? – Does Caroline understand the story? – Does the plumber fix the tap? – Does Mary send the letters? – Does she say swearwords? - Do your parents lock their front door? – Do you and Joseph enjoy rain? – Do they travel by car? - Do they work every day? – Does Rose want a coffee? – Does Geena bring some flowers? – Do Daniel and I lock the door? – Do you go to the cinema every week? – Does it lift 400 kilograms? – Do cats and dogs eat the same food? – Do your friends pay cash? – Does the wind blow strongly in this place? – Does Robert study German? - Do people throw rubbish on the street? – Do the students bring their dictionaries every day? – Do Sally and Pam lose weight easily? – Does Mónica smoke five cigarettes daily? – Does the guest check out in a few minutes? – Does the sun rise at 6 o'clock in summer?

#### **F. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con negative full answers:**

Does her husband like greens? – Do banks open at 8 o'clock? – Do those students know English? – Do your children sleep on their sleepbag? – Does Peter play the guitar very well? – Do you often pass by his front door? – Do we attend to an interesting speech tomorrow? – Do we wash the dishes after breakfast? - Do Jim and Peter go to the cinema? – Does she have breakfast early in the morning? – Does Ben touch the old book? – Does your mother usually break her glasses? – Do Jane and I arrive this evening? - Does your neighbour fly to Canada next month? – Does your sister always do her homework? – Do they see the sunrise? – Does she cross the bridge with her brother? – Do the policemen always find the truth? – Does Alan try all the cakes? – Do Betty and Paul forget the gift? – Does Bill study Dutch? – Do I open the petshop? – Does the wind blow strong during this season? – Do they lift the boxes? – Does Charles catch wild animals? Does your boyfriend fix his truck? – Do you and I like white chocolate? - Does the bird fly without problem? - Do Sharon, George and I want to have breakfast? – Does your sister teach maths? – Do Daniela and Sonia dance pop music? – Does she watch a romantic movie? – Do their parents understand Japanese? - Does Alex think about his new life? – Does he fight on Saturday? – Do the guests arrive at nine? - Do Henry and you wear the same uniform? – Does the child cry easily? – Do we get a lot of money? – Do they bring the beer? – Do we write an interesting story? - Does Pat go to the theatre every Friday? – Do all of us smoke cigars? – Does William have supper? – Does she do everything all right? – Do we dance tango together? - Does the sun rise early? – Does the dog bite thieves? – Do you spend your vacation in the South? – Does he check in at 11.00 pm? – Does she accept the result? – Does the baby sleep all the night?

#### **G. Consteste las siguientes Wh- questions:**

What color do you like? – Where do you swim? – When do they come? – How does she feel? – Why do you sell it? – How many pairs of shoes does he have? – Where do we sleep? – What language do you speak? – What does alligator mean? – Why does she cut the paper? – How many books do you read? – What do you

do? – Where do you put the vegetables? – How often do you go to the beach? – How much does the computer cost? – Who do you give the report to? – How often do you drink coffee? – When do we see our parents? - What date do classes begin? – When does she bring the cake? – How do I find the place? – How many e-mails do you write every day? – What color does she choose? – How far do they throw the ball? – How much money do you spend on weekends? – What day does she ride her bicycle? – What date do you leave? – How often do they eat meat? – What clothes does she wear on summer? – What do you dream of? – Which package do we send? – What do I teach? – Who drives the car? – How often do they run on the park? – How much does she pay? – How long does your sister teach Chinese? What do you think of studying? – How do you wash your car? – Where does the bus stop? - How many hours do you watch television? – How far do they walk? – What music does she listen to? – When do you fix the stereo? – What color do we prefer? – How many cigarettes do I smoke? – What meal do you prepare on Sundays? – Where does she stay on vacations? – How long do they wait for the bus? – When does she close the window? – What do you use to lock the door? – What do you study? – What date does he travel to Canada? – What time does he open the store? – When do you finish your work? – What day do they call their friends? – Where does the baby sleep? - What kind of music does she play? – What time does he usually cross the street? -

#### ***H. Cambie las oraciones afirmativas a negativas:***

Joel cleans the windows. – Michael speaks French. – Alice and Peter lock the door. – I include everything in the report. – Carlo closes the refrigerator. – Rachel waits the bus. – George and Samantha like junk food. – He lives in Valparaíso. – They enjoy playing soccer. – We stay in the Sheraton Hotel. – I complain because of the noise. – Josephine calculates the bill. – Rick and Ross prepare Chinese food. – Fidel Castro smokes cigars. – She likes to be alone. – The mechanic fixes the truck. – We order Mexican food. – Martin listens to the teacher. – Sebastian asks for a play station for his birthday. - They decide to travel to Chile. – She observes the picture. – Claudio loves Caroline. – Rihana walks on the beach. – We want a new computer. – I pass my examination. – Sam touches the table with his noise. – Vladimir watches a Russian movie. – Marcela plans her classes very well. – The taxi stops on the next corner. – Rose washes her teeth. – I look for a new job. – Children visit their uncle. – Joseph opens the restaurant. – The students answer all the questions correctly. – The teacher asks children many questions. – They finish the race. – The girls need clothes. – Maurice lifts the table. – Philip and Lesly cross the bridge. – We try to convince the judge. – I join the two pieces. – The boat arrives at 9 o'clock. – Leonard charges the truck with boxes. – Manuel hires Melissa. – Laura and I check out of the hotel. – She checks in at the hotel. – Marlene cooks bacon and egg for breakfast. – We accept you as our friend. – I allow you to live in my house. – You book a table at the Miramar Restaurant. – You always change your mind. – We study hard. – Your parents allow you to go out alone. – Zoe and I eat pizza twice a week. Zulma speaks Italian very well. – They water the garden twice a week. – You sell your motorcycle. – I tell you everything.

#### ***I. Cambie las oraciones negativas a afirmativas:***

The baby does not cry in the morning. – The competition does not start today. – They do not move the bus. – Camille does not sign the documents. - Mary does not answer the test. -Philip does not call by phone. – The team does not play on Mondays. - The President does not travel by bus. – Children do not work. – Joey does not study for the test. – I do not change my mind about that. – Ingrid does not book a table for dinner. – My parents do not allow me to go to the dance club. – His mother does not cry easily. – Melissa and I do not accept your conditions. – My aunt does not go to the opera. – The boss does not hire men. – Joey does not arrive early. – Robert does not try Mexican food. – Children do not cross the street alone. – Anne does not lift the book. – Her father does not fly to France. - We do not need new shoes. – Students do not finish

homework. – The teacher does not ask the questions. – Tamara does not open the door. – The engineer does not permit us to be late. – Charles does not visit her cousins. – Helen does not try that ice-cream. - The couple does not look for a new house. – Peter and Anne do not wash their car. – The bus does not stop here. – He does not do all the activities. – Katie does not watch television at night. – James does not touch animals. – The cat does not want to eat. – She does not love her boyfriend. – I do not look at him. – James and I ask for a new washing machine. – Adults do not listen to pop music. – The carpenter does not fix the chair. – Lupe does not like junk food. – The doctor does not smoke. – My brothers do not prepare lunch. – My sisters do not complain about the cold weather. – I do not stay at your house. – Helen does not enjoy scary movies. – You do not live in Mexico. – My cat does not catch birds. – The child does not cross the street alone.

### **J. Transforme las siguientes oraciones en preguntas:**

The boys answer the questions. – Your brother needs a new copybook. – The policeman asks him a lot of questions. – I like ice-cream. – Peter enjoys Christmas. – The recipe includes onions. – Sarah and John study German.

– George and his wife live in a big house. – His daughter does everything. - The student finishes the homework early. – The drugstore opens at 9 o'clock. – The tourists travel around the world. – The boss looks for new clients. – I want a new cell phone. - Time passes by so fast. – Peter touches watermelons before buying them. – . – The manager decides the schedule. – Mary loves chocolate. – Her son goes to England every year. - The taxi stops here. – I do not wash my clothes. – Ralf visits his parents on weekends. - I never cry. – Patrick changes every week his program. – The movie starts at 10 o'clock. – They move the boxes. – Children play the guitar. – Nadia signs autographs on her pictures. – The lady cleans the kitchen. – The train arrives late. – They call me every morning. – Oliver tries speaking Spanish. - My father fixes everything. – Boys never listen. – Alice asks for a coffee. – Michael and Marlene complain a lot. – Tamara closes the door. – Charles tries a bit of pizza. – I stay at my aunt's house. – The accountant calculates the whole thing. – The professor teaches French. - They smoke inside the house. – My grandmother prepares dinner. – Children do not cross the street alone. – Charlotte cooks cakes. – Patrick does not talk to her. - They do not lock the store. – I prefer orange juice. – Charlotte loses her money very often. – The cake smells great. – Dogs bite hard. – Women spend a lot of money on clothes. – Your niece catches a yellow butterfly. – My cousins come here. – They broke glasses. – .He flies to Brazil once a year. -

### **K. Transforme las siguientes oraciones a preguntas utilizando el ‘Question Word’ adecuado:**

I choose the red card. – They spend \$5.000 per night. – Sebastian puts the books on the shelf. – I go to the beach every weekend. – Dan lives in Valparaíso. - Lisa leaves the house at 9 o'clock. – Aaron and Philip have two dogs. – I like a kind of red apples. - Esther sells cookies. – He tries different kind of food every week. - Oliver feels happy. – Caroline teaches Japanese. – The airplane flies fast. – Julie finds 3 keys. – The secretary hides \$2.000. – I know the answer. – Mary and Claire break four glasses. - Helen throws the ball to the garden. – Christine lends me three books. - Tina cuts the papers. – Oliver speaks fast. - Julian learns Chinese. – Jeffry writes in English twice a week. – They spell it wrong. – Richard brings four flowers. – They throw water on the garden. – Jeremy takes the Spanish test. - The party starts at 9 o'clock. – Julie rides her bicycle on the park. - I sleep 8 hours. – The wedding begins at 7 o'clock. - Charles touches the baby softly. – Patty drinks a lot of water. - Sam washes his hair every morning. - Rose and Nikolas give me two apples. – I hear a noise. – Ronny reads the letters in the morning. – I usually spend half a day in the post office. - Kevin writes poems. – The teacher forgets everything at night. – My mother is quite far from me. - Janine shows me her butterfly collection. - They go to the park. – His grandmother makes chocolate cakes. –

Children break windows with stones. – My sweater is brown and red. – Viña del Mar is 80 kilometers far from Santiago. – My sister gives all her dresses at the end of the summer. - I have breakfast early in the morning. - I work in an office. – She watches TV at night. - The baby always cries when he wants to eat. - Your dog usually catches my cat. – The mechanic fixes the wheels fast. – The girl studies four hours per day. – Gina finishes at 5 o'clock.-

**L. Forme una oración con las siguientes palabras cambiando el infinitivo de acuerdo al sujeto:**

Bruno – his -dinner – with - brother. – have  
cross – the - Robert – with- luggage. - street- his  
my – I - too much. – love - friends  
She – her – touch – all - time. - hair- the  
nonsense. – say – Paul -Federic – always-and  
do -Your- anything. – does not - daughter  
every - go – the – Jim –Saturday.- to - theatre  
book - read – and – I – every - Zulma – week. - a  
his – Pam – watch TV- dog. -with  
feel – I – do- year. - not – in - shape – this - good  
She – dishes – wash –day. – the - every  
do - a lot of– We – have – money. - not  
child - cross –garden - without -The- help. - the  
send – They – holidays. blue – during – envelopes - their  
cry – every - baby – night. The  
German – students. – The - teach – to – professor -the  
Your – once –brother- a - trees – year. - cut - the  
cat – easily – catch – birds. Your  
plan – winter. - go – to - Brazil - We – in - to  
tap. – does – The- not - fix –plumber - the  
a - reserve – for- I – table – dinner.  
ten – his – finish – evening. - in –The – work – employee – at - the

**LESSON FOUR**  
**Infinitive**  
**Gerund**  
**Present Continuous**

**¿Qué es un Infinitivo? (Infinitive)**

**El Infinitivo** es una palabra que expresa una acción de la forma más pura.

En español los infinitivos terminan en **-ar**, **-er** e **-ir**. Por ejemplo caminar, comer, vivir, etc.

En inglés los infinitivos no tienen terminaciones especiales, sólo hay que aprenderlos. Por eso es muy importante saber los infinitivos que tienes en las tarjetas, porque a medida que vayas aprendiéndolos te darás cuenta que comunicarte se hace cada vez más fácil.

Esta forma simple es invariable y casi siempre suele llevar la preposición **to** delante.

Ejemplos:

**To speak**

**To read**

**To die**

1) El **infinitivo** puede ser usado como sujeto de una oración.

Ejemplos:

**To learn** a second language is difficult.

**To sing** is amusing.

2) Un **infinitivo** también puede ser usado como sujeto de una frase.

Ejemplo:

It is difficult **to learn** a second language.

It is easy **to use** it.

**¿Qué es un gerundio?**

Es la forma del verbo que termina en **-ing** y que puede hacer las veces de sustantivo.

Se diferencia del participio presente porque éste funciona generalmente como un verbo y algunas veces como un adjetivo.

Ejemplos:

<b>Gerundio</b>	<b>Participio Presente</b>	
	como verbo	como adjetivo
<b>Dancing</b> makes you happy. I like <b>cooking</b> .	He is fishing. I am skiing.	a fishing man. a skiing holiday.

## *¿Cuándo se usa el gerundio?*

Un **gerundio** se usa frecuentemente como sujeto de una frase.

Ejemplos:

**Learning** a second language is difficult.

**Riding** horses is fun .

Para referirse a ciertas actividades recreacionales a menudo se usa **go + gerundio**.

Ejemplos:

I **go shopping** every weekend.

Do you **go skiing**?

## *¿Cómo se forma el gerundio?*

Para formar el gerundio a la mayoría de los infinitivos le agregamos **-ing** (equivalente en español a la terminación **-ando, -iendo**).

### **Cambios que sufren los infinitivos para formar su gerundio**

- A la mayoría de los verbos se le agrega **-ing**.

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Gerund</b>
play	playing
do	doing
go	going
help	helping
eat	eating

- Si un verbo termina en **-e**, ésta se cambia por **-ing**.

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Gerund</b>
have	having
write	writing
smoke	smoking
come	coming
leave	leaving

- Si el verbo termina en **vocal + consonante**, se dobla la consonante y se agrega **-ing**.

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Gerund</b>
stop	stopping
run	running
swim	swimming
win	winning
plan	planning

- Si el verbo termina en **-ie**, se cambia por una y + **-ing**.

Infinitive	Gerund
die	dying
lie	lying
tie	tying

**Hum... What are they doing?**



**What are they doing?**



## Present Continuous

### ¿Cómo se forma el Present Continuous?

El *Present Continuous* se forma con el presente del verbo **to be** + un **gerundio**. (En inglés **gerund** o **present participle**)

### ¿Cómo se forma la conjugación de este tiempo verbal?

Este tiempo verbal se forma con el *Present Simple* del verbo **to be** + **gerund**.

#### Present Simple verb to be + Gerund

I	am	playing
You	are	playing
He	is	playing
She	is	playing
It	is	playing
We	are	playing
You	are	playing
They	are	playing

Como este tiempo verbal se forma con el verbo **to be** las preguntas, las respuestas, las oraciones negativas y las *short answers* se forman de igual manera como se hace con el verbo **to be**.

Examples:

**I am reading** a book.

**You are sleeping.**

**He is writing** a letter.

**We are playing** cards.

**They are buying** shoes.

**I am not reading** a book.

**You are not sleeping.**

**He is not writing** a letter.

**We are not playing** cards.

**They are not buying** shoes.

**I'm not reading** a book.

**You're not sleeping.**

**He isn't writing** a letter.

**We're not playing** cards.

**They aren't buying** shoes.

**Is he drinking** a coke?

Yes, he **is drinking** a coke.

No, he **isn't drinking** a coke.

**Are they watching** TV in the living room?

Yes, they **are watching** TV in the living room.

No, they **aren't watching** TV in the living room?

**Are they enjoying** the party?

Yes, they **are**.

No, they **aren't**.

**Is the architect building** a new house?

Yes, he **is**.

No, he **isn't**.

### ¿Cuándo se usa el Present Continuous?

1) El *Present Continuous* se usa para hablar de lo que está sucediendo ahora o situaciones que están ocurriendo en este período de nuestras vidas.

Generalmente encontramos a este tiempo verbal junta con expresiones como **now**, **right now**, **at this moment** y **these days**.

Dialogues:

- a. Hello Peter! What are you doing **now**?
- b. Hi Richard! I'm studying English.
- a. OK. Call you later.
  
- a. Hi dad! What are you doing **now**?
- b. Hi dear! I'm sleeping **right now**.
- a. Sorry, call you tomorrow.
  
- a. Nice to see you Evelyn!
- b. Nice to see you too, Bob!
- a. Are you busy **at this moment**?
- b. No, it's my lunch break.
- a. Oh! I see. Let's go to have lunch together.
- b. OK.
  
- a. Hello Peter!
- b. Hello George!
- a. What are you doing **in these days**?
- b. I'm working for CNN and you?
- a. I'm still working for the International Bank.

2) Eventualmente también se puede usar **Present Continuous** para acciones futuras o eventos que están planeados con anticipación.

I am **travelling** to the North next summer.

We're **having** spaghetti for dinner.

I am **washing** my hair this evening.

3) Cuando se quiere expresar algo que ocurre regularmente se emplea **Present Simple** y junto con expresiones como: *in general, regularly, often, never, normally, first, usually*, etc.

Mientras que para hablar de acciones que están ocurriendo en este mismo momento o de varias acciones que se están dando al mismo tiempo se ocupa **Present Continuous** con expresiones como: *right now, at this moment, these days, today, now*, etc.

Ejemplo:

Marie watches TV every day. (**Present Simple**)

Right now, Marie **is watching** TV and **eating** a sandwich. (**Present Continuous**)

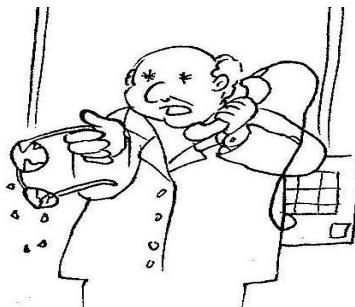
**¿Pueden todos los verbos usarse en este tiempo verbal?**

No. Hay varios verbos que no se pueden usar en tiempos continuos.

## Lista de verbos más comunes que no se usan en tiempos progresivos

<b>Estados mentales y emocionales</b>		
believe doubt feel (= have an opinion) hate imagine know	(dis)like love prefer realise recognise remember	see suppose think (= have an opinion) understand want wish
<b>Uso de los sentidos</b>		
feel hear	see smell	sound taste
<b>Verbos de comunicación y reacción</b>		
agree appear astonish deny disagree	impress look (= seem) mean please	promise satisfy seem surprise
<b>Otros</b>		
be belong concern consist contain depend	deserve fit include involve lack matter	measure (= have lenght) need owe own possess weigh (= have weight)

**What is he holding on his right hand?**



## Ejercicios

### Present Continuous

#### A. Desarrolle las siguientes conjugaciones según corresponda:

I (open). – We (answer). – Sara and Matías (dream). – They (play). – We (have). – Your brothers (lift). - I (work). – She (swim). – It (blow). – You and I (stand). – The sun (rise). – I (look). – Your mother (give). – They (make). – John, Peter and Jim (go). – He (walk). – My neighbour (run). – It (move). – I (write). – You and I (eat). – We (keep). – She (drive). – The doorbell (ring). – You (tie). - He (choose). – It (win). – They (begin). – We (leave). - Adela (swim). – Anne (smoke). – The little child (cry). – The team (win). – I (help). – We (repair). – You (do). - They (live). - Your horse (die). – Your niece (lie). - Sally and Sue (plan). – I (order). – You (prefer). – They (include). – He (lock). – She (complain). – You and I (stay). – You (calculate). – I (ask for). – We (learn). - They (shut). – It (bite). – We (try). – Your parents (join). – He (sign). – She (write). – They (light). – We (sell). – The child (learn). – We (have). – You (speak). – He (sleep). – Sarah (read). – They (meet). – Your dad (come). – His cousin (plan). – Her daughter (say). – We (do). – They (sleep). - The doctor (visit). – The guest (learn).

#### B. Reemplace al sujeto de la oración y conjúguelo de acuerdo a la información dada:

Patrick and John are arriving on time. (**She**) – Francisca is planning to go to Puerto Montt. (**They**) - The children are lying to you. (**The child**) – Your kids are playing soccer. (**I**) – His plane is leaving at 3 a.m. (**He**) - You are tying your shoes. (**Your mother**) - Jonathan and I are looking for a table. (**They**) - He is missing you too much. (**You and I**) – My aunt and you are waiting for him (**She**) – My friends are reading a book. (**We**) – We are buying some toys for the child. (**Their parents**) – My father is allowing me to go out on Friday. (**They**) – My sister and I are choosing a gift. (**We**) – The thieves are stealing a big bank. (**The thief**) – You are not paying the bill. (**Sally**) – He is keeping silent. (**Pat and I**) – My father isn't allowing me to play with the computer. (**My Aunts**) – We are crossing the river. (**It**) – Mary and I are spending the money. (**Dann**) – She is catching a cold. (**Pat and Sue**) – They are choosing a good performance. (**My mother**) – Nina and Simon are telling stories. (**I**) - I am speaking English right now. (**Jeanette**) – These men are selling watches. (**The man**) – Jean is collecting stamps. (**Your aunts**) – We are having a party. (**Julie**) – Soccer players are winning. (**The soccer player**) - My mom is making a cake. (**They**) – The flowers are dying. (**The flower**) - Those men are burning the paper. (**He**) – The bird is singing. (**The birds**) – I am dancing tango. (**You and I**) – They are running fast. (**The cat**) – The architect is building a big house. (**Polly and I**) – We are washing a car. (**The man**) - The movie is finishing at 9 p.m. (**The races**) – The ducks are flying. (**The butterfly**) – Your parents are sleeping. (**My friendo and I**) – Your daughter is falling in love. (**Your daughter and his son**) – I am booking a place. (**They**) - Her family is accepting you. (**They**)

#### C. Cambie de Present Simple a Present Continuous:

Patrick cooks pasta. – They walk on the beach. – She writes a letter. – Christine plays the guitar. – I sing a song. - Children go to school. – They listen to music. – He runs around the hill. - I paint the wall. – She walks home alone. – Richard eats vegetables. – Aaron and I play soccer. – Julie comes to classes. – The book costs \$2.000. - Boys build a castle. - She pays in cash. – They drive a bus. – Students wear a uniform. – He tells a story. – She does the homework. – Katherine swims in the swimming pool. – I read magazines. – My parents buy a new house. - Charles drinks milk. – They take a lot of pictures. – Anne speaks Spanish. - The girls practice rock. – Dogs fight all the time. – I fly to New York. – Hugo teaches German. – Mary and Karla sell cookies. – Anne sleeps on my bed. – I leave work at 7 o'clock. – Herman rides horses. – Kids draw on

the living room. – The teacher asks many questions. – Dan studies Mathematics. – I work on the office. – She lives in Valparaíso. – The tourists travel around Valparaíso. – They look for a restaurant. – She watches television. – Babies cry a lot. – He changes his mind. – The movie starts at 10 o'clock. – The housekeeper cleans the floor. – Sharon calls me by phone. – The mechanic fixes the car. – She closes the book. – They wait for the bus. – Danielle drinks milk. - My mother prepares dinner. – Children cross the bridge. – Karen cooks fish. - You wash the clothes. – He talks loudly. – She locks the door. – The bird sings nicely. - You tie your shoes. - We run fast. - The team wins the game. - They allow me to stay here. -We try everything. – You join the pieces. – He checks out at 7 a.m. – The man tell us the truth. – We cut the branches of the trees. – They leave home at 8 p.m. – We steal some candies.

#### **D. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative short answers:**

Are you learning English? - Is Peter singing a sad song? - Are they riding an elephant? - Am I teaching Chinese? – Is he spending a lot of money? – Is she leaving the house? – Are they sleeping? – Is she selling souvenirs? – Are you feeling well? – Is Michael having a shower? – Are they flying to París now? – Are those students complaining? – Is the telephone ringing right now? – Are my parents booking a room? – Is he travelling by car? - Is she talking to you? - Are they washing their hair? - Is he cooking pasta? – Is the child passing by the museum? – Is my mother preparing supper? – Is Peter moving out his apartment? - Is Herman waiting the train? – Is she turning off the oven? – Is your father fixing the lock? – Are you calling Mary? – Is she cleaning the floor? Is the movie starting now? – Is he watching TV? – Are they looking for the dog? - Is she traveling by plane? – Are they living here? – Is she working hard? – Are they studying Arts? – Is he asking the address? – – Are they opening the door? – Is she walking on the beach? – Are you lifting the boxes? – Is he calculating everything? – Are you staying in their house? – Is he asking for help? – Are you listening to the radio? – Is Mary planning the party? – Are we trying hard enough? – Is she arriving now? – Are we checking out tomorrow? – Are they burning the bushes? – Is she playing computer games? – Is Sarah moving the chairs? – Are you waking up the child? – Am I teaching French? – Is she selling stamps? – Are you spending a lot of money? – Is he saying the truth? – Are you driving your new car? – Is he sleeping on the sofa? – Is he coming from far away? – Are we doing everything correctly? – Are the men spending too much time in the bar? – Are you going to France this year?

#### **E. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con negative short answers:**

Is Anne writing a story? – Are you going home now? – Is he making a chocolate cake? – Are you buying presents? – Is she sending a package to her family? – Are they reading the book? – Is he swimming on the ocean? – Are you doing exercises? – Is he telling a story? – Is she eating fruit? – Are they wearing hats? – Are you running on the street? – Is he driving a truck? – Is he paying in cash? – Is John building the house? – Is Paul coming now? – Are you learning Italian? – Is he speaking Chinese? – Is he singing a song for me? – Are you cooking the meat? – Is he waking Peter up? – Are you having fun? – Is the class starting now? – Is Charles drinking coffee? – Are we flying on a plane? - Are Jeff and Lisa fighting? - Is the cat hiding under the bed? – Am I teaching History? – Is Caroline selling shoes? – Am I spending money? – Is he saying lies? – Am I drawing a horse? – Is he sleeping on the floor? – Are they playing chess? – Is the housekeeper washing the clothes? – Are you crossing your fingers? – Is he smoking marijuana? – Are you waiting for the news? – Is he spending all his salary? – Are you fixing the picture? – Are they calling you? – Is he cleaning the ceiling? – Is the baby crying? – Am I traveling around the world? – Is he living here? – Are you working at the museum? – Is he growing beans? – Are you blowing a whistle? - Are you and I going out this evening? – Are they bringing the drinks? – Is the wind blowing strongly? – Is he throwing javelin? – Am I ordering my stuff? Is the knife hurt your hand? – Is Simone riding a donkey? – Is he tearing his clothes? - Are you painting the market? – Are we listening to his speech? - Are they breaking the glass'?' – Is your dog jumping? – Is he opening the bookstore? - Am I keeping these papers?

#### **F. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative full answers:**

Are you playing baseball? - Are we standing here for one hour? – Is his son falling in love? – Am I telling you a nice story? – Is it rising early? – Are Pat and Geena complaining to you? – Are Jane, Jim and I locking the door? - Is your mother working in a bank? – Is your father applying for a new job? – Am I reserving a table for dinner? - Is my daughter missing shool next month? – Is my friend Julie wearing a new dress? – Is Michael cutting the grass? – Am I writting properly? – Is the dying man with his relatives? - Are my parents meeting the new neighbours? – Are the children breaking the glasses? – Is the kid sleeping well? – Are they holding the wall? – Are Sally and you playing basketball? – Are they looking for a new house? - Is Alice winning the game? – Am I doing the homework? – Are the twins having a nice time? – Is he sending a present? – Is she spending all her money? – Is it catching flies? – Is your brother riding a dolphin? – Is she fighting with you? – Are we waiting for our friends? – Are they cooking Thai food? – Is he eating sushi? - Is the store opening now? – Is my cat sleeping on the bed? – Are these guests arriving tonight? – Is that restaurant selling Chinese food? – Are the doctors giving help? – Are we sending you a gift? – Are Simone and Helen bringing coke? – Are they coming with us? - Am I brushing my teeth? – Is he doing his homework? – Is Daniel flying by plane? – Is she finishing her drawing? – Is the little child going to school? Is it getting dark? – Are the classes beginning at 10 o'clock? – Are they tidying their room? - Is the worm moving fast? - Am I going crazy? – Are you fixing your brakes? – Are we dancing well? – Is Mary looking healthy? – Is it running fast? – Are the players losing the game?

#### **G. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con negative full answers:**

Is Helen cooking in Sarah's kitchen? - Are we hiding the money? – Am I changing the colours? - Is your sister taking care of the baby? – Are they giving money to the poor? – Are we climbing this mountain? – Is he taking his medicine? – Is your son coming with us? – Is it catching a rabitt? – Am I staying at home? – Are we having some snacks? - Are they buying some milk? – Are you and I listening pop music? – Am I enjoying the performance? – Is he talking loud? – Is Leila asking for food? – Are we trying to get it? – Are the children keeping quiet? – Am I getting tired? – Is that restaurant serving good food? – Are you cleaning your apartment? – Are my parents beginning a new adventure? – Is it getting cold? – Am I waking up early? – Are you coming by bus? – Are we shutting the door strongly? – Are you losing your money? – Am I using red ink? – Are the children drawing on their notebooks? – Am I having a party? – Are you spending all your holidays in Viña del Mar? – Are we hearing a strange noise? – Is the restaurant selling beer? – Are we making a bird house? – Are the doctors visiting her? – Is the mosquito biting you? – Are your mom and dad leaving the city this night? - Is this picture getting expensive? - Are Kathy and Leila eating in the cafeteria? – Am I trying a new drink? – Is the phone ringing right now? – Is your friend drinking a glass of beer? – Are the monkeys dumping happily? – Are they reading the newspaper? – Is it moving fast? – Is Brad travelling by train? – Are the penguins enjoying the water? - Am I watching a beautiful butterfly? – Is it getting cloudy? – Is he breaking the eggs? – Is Sue buying everything? – Am I making an effort? – Are your brother and my sister falling in love? – Are we winning the game? – Are they swimming well? – Are the children enjoying the party? – Are we discussing every moment? – Are they coming later?

#### **H. Consteste las siguientes Wh- questions:**

What are you doing? – Where are we hiding? – What are Sue and Paul drinking? – What time am I waking up? – How often are they going to the cinema? – How long is he studying? - How many things is Polly selling? – What day am I finishing my work? – What colour are you and I choosing? – When is the nurse coming? – Who is knocking the door righth now? – When is she opening the door? – Where are you crossing the park? – How far is he running? – When are they cooking the meat? – How much bread is Patty buying? –

Where is the baby sleeping on? – What are you talking about? - Where is your mother learning English? – How much money are they spending? – How many days am I doing exercises? – Who is calculating the results? – Why are you complaining now? – Where is your sister swimming? – What date are Kathy and Leslie beginning their classes? – How is he feeling? - Where is he working now? – What colour are we choosing? – What are they writing? – How many gifts is John bringing? – What colour is her sweater? – How are you paying that? – How many days are you staying in town? – How long are you keeping it as a secret? – Where is he spending his free time? – How far is your father walking? – What is she saying? – Where are they meeting us? – What day are we arriving? - How often is he doing exercises? – What kind of food is she feeding her dog on? – Who is telling them the truth? – Why are they lying us? – How much sadness are you feeling now?

When are you planning to do that? – How far are we running? – How often is he flying to New York? – Who is your niece asking for? – When are they showing that? – Where is he building his house? - Where is the rice growing?

### **I. Cambie las oraciones afirmativas a negativas:**

John is cleaning his room. – I am keeping silent – Dannie is drawing with a grey pencil. – Peter is paying in cash. – They are wearing black pants. – We are staying at the office all day. – He is sending a lot of food. – Carla is buying some good carrots. - His brother and I are sending her a letter. – They are cutting all the trees. – I am lighting the house. – We are doing that again. – We are going to swim in our vacations. – Sally and I are meeting him. – We are learning French. - They are having a good time. – She is telling us the truth. – The cat is falling down. – They are watching a scary movie. – We are doing business. – The flight is leaving at 6 p.m. – Your friends are riding a camel.- She is making mistakes. -

I am burning the leaves. – They are shooting the birds. – Pam, Paul and Verónica are lifting those boxes. - Your friend is studying hard. – He is opening the windows. - We are spending our time with you. – They are travelling soon. – Your mom is making a cake. – I am giving him a handicraft. – My heart is beating fast. – I am standing here. – They are making a strange noise. – We are deciding our future. – Prices are rising. – Vivian and I are planning to go there. – I am signing the contract. – The employer is hiring a new engineer. – My parents are borrowing a new computer program. – The waitress is charging us the bill. – We are meeting at the airport. – They are booking a table for dinner. – My friends are arriving at noon. – I am reserving a room there. – He is asking you some questions. – She is working hard. – Your sister is riding a pony. – We are coming late.- He is fixing his keys all the time. – She is leaving her dirty socks on the floor. – We are stealing some candies at the store. – We are spending a lot of money -

### **J. Cambie las oraciones negativas a afirmativas:**

The child is not crying right now. – The spider is not biting the child. – The matches are not burning well. – Susan and Pat are not waking up early. – It is not moving very fast. – She is not changing her mind. – I am not washing the dishes again. – They are not driving a taxi. – We are not looking at him. – They are not giving the test. – I am not visiting my family. – They are not speaking loud. – Mary and John are not telling you everything. – Your son is not sleeping right now. – They are not doing exercises in the morning. – I am reading an interesting book. – We are not saying that. - Your parents are not joining you this morning. – I am not learning German. – We are not eating Japanese food. – Your sister is sending me a mail. - They are not sitting beside us. – She is not dreaming. – He is not wearing a scarf. – They are not paying with credit cards. – The professor is not teaching us correctly. – They are not building a big house. – I am not signing a new contract. – My dogs are not fighting with your dog. – The wind is not blowing strong. – Corn is not growing in the North Pole. – He is not writing poems.- She is not flying this night.- The kids are not throwing the ball.- I am not choosing an apartment yet.- The doorbell is not ringing well.- It is not getting dark.- We are

not having a good day.- It is not beginning at time.- We are not bringing the red wine. – They are not complaining about the damage. - I am not staying home tonight.- We are not fixing the bulb.- The car is not moving fast. – It is not starting at 9 o'clock. – We are not asking for a new job.- Your son and my daughter are not crying right now.- They are not complaining about your mistakes. – The child is not touching his ear.- We are not speaking Chinese.- They are not having a party.

### **K. Transforme las siguientes oraciones en preguntas:**

Your partners are coming to the meeting.- The boy is doing his exercises.- Your son is waking up late.- The policeman is running after the thief.- I am enjoying the party.- George and his wife are teaching History.- The drugstore is selling half price.- The train is arriving at 10 o'clock. – Boys are not passing their tests. – Your boss is not hiring a new employee. – Children are not crying right now. – The movie is starting at 8 o'clock. – Charlotte is preparing a new program. – The students and the teacher are visiting a museum. - Michael and Tamara are playing cards right now. – My heart is beating too fast. – My cousins are buying some junk food. – I am taking a French course next month. – Alice is asking for dinner. – Her husband is trying to do his best. – The cook is smelling the cinnamon. – I am looking for my little brother. – We are taking care of them. – You are taking a break. – Oliver is choosing a nice present. – The ladies are complaining about the noise. – My grandmother is welcoming you. – The corn is growing fast. – I am getting hungry. – It is getting cloudy. – The tourists are arriving by plane. – The chef is including some fish in the menu. – Pat is changing her mind. – I am travelling to Africa this year. – It is getting boring. – We are playing the piano. – Marlene is walking in the park. – My brothers are watching TV. – The carpenter is fixing the chairs. – The engineer is calculating the distance. – Alex and Andrew are flying tomorrow morning. – The boys are answering the phone. – We are attending classes every day. – The students are correcting their homework. – The manager is preparing the trip. – The baby is touching my nose. – The bus is moving slowly. - The guest is checking in right now.

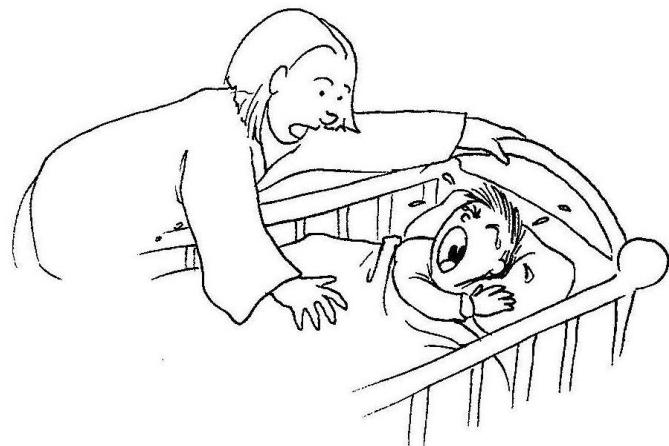
### **L. Transforme las siguientes oraciones a preguntas utilizando el ‘Question Word’ adecuado:**

Paul is coming at nine o'clock. – I am bringing some wine. – We are buying some bread. – He is arriving by train. – She is travelling on Wednesday. – My dad is arriving at 7 o'clock. – They are choosing the red skirt. – He is spending a lot of money. – She is taking an English course. – We are going to the theatre twice a month. – Sally is trying to improve her English. – Sally is travelling to England next month. – Your friend is buying a nice present. – She is painting a blue vase. - They are moving slowly. – We are watching TV. – We are looking for two books. – My mother is preparing the meal. – She is cooking spaghetti. – The child is wearing a brown T-shirt. – They are going to Europe. – You are washing your hair. – I am taking a taxi. – It is getting cold. – I am staying there for three months. – We are spending all the money. – They are carrying two packages. – I am waiting for her. – We are learning Portuguese. – The tourists are staying here. – The managers are checking out this morning. – The temperature is rising. – Bob is opening the restaurant. – We are selling three English dictionaries. – My friend is parking the car. – I am travelling all this year. – The teacher is changing the exercises. – Children are playing soccer in the park. – Charles is speaking loud. – My father is fixing the table with a hammer. – My mother is cleaning the house next week end. – You are taking care of your parents for two months. – The phone is ringing too much. – Pat is complaining about her salary. – The owner is hiring two persons more. – She is living with her mother these days. – The teacher is asking me a lot of questions. – I am writing a short story. – It is growing fast.

**M. Forme una oración con las siguientes palabras:**

walking – now. – is - in - street - He - the  
boss – a – employee. – hiring - The - new - is  
man - this - lifting - the – at - moment. – is – That – table  
waitress –bill - now. – the - is - The - calculating  
is – Mary – -at – staying – home - these - days.  
asking for - girl - a – The – cell - new - phone – is – now.  
listening - Patrick - music – to - is – now.  
wife - at - - My - moment.– contract - is – this - signing - the  
money. – He – spending – much –is – too  
his – is – George - weekend. - family - visiting - this  
playing - Children - are - basketball - now.  
on- are – They – time. - arriving  
a - time. - planning – this - party- is - Karen– at  
father – the - is – door - at - My - this - locking – minute.  
is - to - speaking - Charles - girl - now. - the  
cake – this - grandmother – a - His – is – cooking – evening.  
helping – sister. – Mr. Robb – is - his  
water. – are – drinking – Felipe – I - and  
Landlady – bread. – is – making – and – cake – a  
friends – drinking – and – pisco sour. – a – I – My  
socks. – He – not – changing - is

**Is the baby crying?**



## **LESSON FIVE**

**Past Simple**  
**It is - It was**  
**So - Neither**  
**Verb to wonder**  
**Past Continuous**  
**Used to**

### ***¿Cuándo se usa el Past Simple?***

Se usa el ***Past Simple*** principalmente para hablar de una acción que ocurrió y terminó en el pasado. Por ejemplo, cuando nos referimos a eventos cortos, acciones o hechos que suceden de repente, períodos prolongados y acciones repetidas.

Ejemplos:

They **met** in 1995.

Suddenly, it **started** to rain.

I **spent** all my childhood in the north of Chile.

Regularly, every summer she **bought** a new car.

Se puede usar con una palabra o expresión que indique que la acción sucedió en el pasado, pero también se puede usar sin expresiones de tiempo.

### ***¿Qué expresiones pueden acompañar al Past Simple?***

**Ago – yesterday – last night – last week - yesterday morning, etc.**

Ejemplos:

He visited his parents **yesterday**.

They locked the gate **last night**.

The mechanic fixed the car **last week**.

He came two days **ago**.

### ***¿Cómo forma su conjugación este tiempo verbal?***

Al igual que el ***Present Simple*** necesitamos de auxiliares para formar la pregunta, las oraciones en negación y para responder con *short answers*.

Para todas estas situaciones usamos el auxiliar ***did***.

## Repaso de conjugaciones presentadas:

### **Infinitive:**

To look (Verbo regular)

Present Simple	Negación	Interrogación
I look.	I don't look.	Do you look?
He looks.	He doesn't look.	Does he look?
They look.	They don't look.	Do they look?
Present Continuous	Negación	Interrogación
I am looking.	I am not looking.	Am I looking?
He's looking.	He isn't looking.	Is he looking?
They're looking.	They aren't looking.	Are they looking?

### **Past Simple:**

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I looked.	I didn't look.	Did I look?
You looked.	You didn't look.	Did you look?
He looked.	He didn't look.	Did he look?
She looked.	She didn't look.	Did she look?
It looked.	It didn't look.	Did it look?
We looked.	We didn't look.	Did we look?
You looked.	You didn't look.	Did you look?
They looked.	They didn't look.	Did they look?

\*Se recomienda repasar la diferencia entre verbos regulares y verbos irregulares.

Toda esta información la encuentras en *Lesson Three*.

Ejemplos:

**Did** you go to Valparaiso last week?  
 Yes, I **went** to Valparaiso last week.  
 No, I **didn't go** to Valparaiso last week.

**Did** he work in the office yesterday?  
 Yes, he **worked** in the office yesterday.  
 No, he **didn't work** in the office yesterday.

**Did** you go to Valparaiso last week?  
 Yes, I **did**.  
 No, I **didn't**.

**Did** he work in the office yesterday?  
 Yes, he **did**.  
 No, he **didn't**.

When **did** he arrive?  
 He **arrived** last Saturday.

Where **did** she buy her jeans?  
 She **bought** them at the mall.

How **did** he feel last night?  
 He **felt** much better.  
 What **did** they study?  
 They **studied** geography.

How many dishes **did** she wash?  
 She **washed** two piles of dishes.  
 How much money **did** she spend?  
 She **spent** all her budget.

## Pronunciación de verbos regulares en el pasado simple

A los verbos regulares se les agrega **-ed** para formar su *Simple Past* y *Past Participle*. Si el verbo termina en **-e** sólo se le agrega **-d**.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Simple Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
To work	worked	worked
To cross	crossed	crossed
To open	opened	opened
To live	lived	lived
To complete	completed	completed

- I. Si el infinitivo termina en los sonidos **c, f, k, p, s, sh, ch** la pronunciación de **-ed** es **t**.
- II. Si el infinitivo termina en los sonidos **b, g, l, m, n, r, v, w, y, z** la pronunciación de **-ed** es **d**.
- III. Si el infinitivo termina en **d** o **t**, la pronunciación de **-ed** es **id**.

### **PRACTICA**

#### *Pronunciation I*

**(t)**

crossed  
worked  
stopped  
pronounced  
washed  
mixed

#### *Pronunciation II*

**(d)**

lived  
covered  
learned  
played  
studied  
opened

#### *Pronunciation III*

**(id)**

represented  
completed  
dictated  
added  
divided  
landed



**Tell the story in Past Tense.**

## Ejercicios Past Simple

### A. Desarrolle las siguientes conjugaciones según corresponda:

They (accept). – I (speak). – The students (do). - The plant (grow). – Jenifer (think). – Teresa (become). – The mechanic (move). – My mother (prepare). – We (spend). – The owner (open). – The girls (order). – The children (cry). – The bus (pass). – The cooker (burn). – Grandmother (show). – Cynthia (feel). – The couple (get). – It (smell). – We (play). – My parents (teach). – She (forget). – You (catch). – My aunt (ring). – Her boyfriend (call). – The boys (lift). – George (go). – They (have). – His father (hear). – It (change). – The teacher (check). – Mary (visit). – My cousins (break). – They (try). – We (turn). – I (wait). – They (blow). – The policemen (let). – My friends (walk). – My wife (want). – The dog (bite). – My sister (wash). – Jonathan (know). – The kid (hit). - The tourist (book). – The car (cost). – Her parents (enjoy). – I (cut). – The judge (ask for). – The engineer (calculate). – The brothers (fight). – The plane (fly). - He (take). – The classes (begin). – The major (permit). – It (rain). – She (give). – We (receive). – The secretary (write). – The babies (play). – The boss (smoke). – It (sound). – I (lose). – The party (start). – The bus (stop). – We (study). – Students (learn). – They (leave). – Patrick (lend). - My niece (draw). – Tom (drink). – You (come). – I (buy) – The Prime Minister (sign).

### B. Reemplace al sujeto de la oración y conjúguelo de acuerdo al pronombre dado:

I wanted a big house. (**My parents**) – Tim and I slept in the living room. (**The cats**)- Gina charged the bill to her roommate. (**My friends**) – Last year he traveled to Canada. (**Julie and Justin**) – I saw the new house. (**The director**) - My grandparents visited me last summer. (**My family**) - He bended the iron bar. (**Men**) – I liked cheese. (**Peter**)- She needed help. (**Everybody**) – The class started at 10 o clock. (**Lessons**) - Peter lifted the table. (**The teacher**) - John prepared dinner. (**The cookers**) – My brothers sat together. (**The couple**) - We watched that old movie. (**Tamara**) – My mother allowed me to go out alone. (**Sarah and Fiona**) – Helen joined the club. (**The football players**) – John said the truth. (**The kids**) – I locked the front door. (**We**) – My mother sold the old car. (**Boys**) - It looked right. (**The reporter**) – We run faster. (**Tigers**) - They stayed with me. (**My sons**) – I listened to classical music. (**My grandfather**) - Gina complained about everything in the party. (**You**) – They asked so many questions. (**The student**) – They lived in California. (**My aunt**) - I smoked two cigarettes yesterday. (**Irene**) – The teacher sent a report. (**We**) - They studied Biology. (**The boy**) – My sisters cooked fried potatoes. (**The maid**) – They reserved a table. (**Oliver**) – They sang loud. (**A jazz band**)

### C. Cambie las oraciones dadas a los tiempos solicitados:

#### C1. De Present Simple a Present Continuous y Past Simple utilizando ‘always, now y yesterday’ según corresponda:

Peter and Lynda play video games. - My mother moves from Santiago to Valparaíso. – George meets his brothers. – Gisselle and Carolina run around the block. – My grandmother makes cakes for the party. – He puts the heavy boxes on the table. – The movie starts late. - You drive a new car. – Oliver pays the bill. - Children listen to rock music. – The day passes quietly. - She smokes mint cigarettes.

## **C2. De Past Simple a Present Continuous y Present Simple utilizando last week, these days y usually según corresponda:**

I talked to my friend. – John read the report. – My aunt complained about that idea. – Teresa watched that soap opera on TV. – George and Camilla worked hard. – I travelled with them. – Young children run fast. – Students asked everything. – I walked on the forest. – Your father said the correct answer. – My niece sold jewels. - Her grandparents sent her a card. – His cousin played rugby. – My nephew asked for a new bicycle.

## **C3. De Present Continuous a Past Simple y a Present Simple utilizando right now, one week ago y often según corresponda:**

Tamara is moving the sofa. - Frank is telling a beautiful story. - Christina and Jerry are washing their curtains. – I am arriving by train. – We are fixing the tap. – The man is driving a big truck. – The dog is crossing the street behind his master. – Children light the oven. - They are collecting some greens. – The teachers are answering all the questions. – My brother is selling the gold and silver medals. – My mother is waking my brother up.

## **D. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative short answers:**

Did you know the answer? - Did he listen to the massage? – Did the computer cost you a lot? - Did you talk to her? – Did your son hit the ball? - Did they check out? – Did they choose the correct alternative? - Did the lady clean the bathroom? – Did the gardener cut the grass? - Did the boss hire the girl? – Did you do the dishes? - Did Tina change the cell phone? – Did your daughter draw the landscape? - Did the man sign a new agreement? – Did you catch the ball? - Did my father book a room for tonight? – Did you leave late? - Did her father drink red wine? - Did the meeting finish early? – Did Teresa and Frank drive home? - Did Carl call you back? - Did you feed the cat? – Did the clothes fall to the ground? - Did Richard and Robert charge the bill to his account? – Did you open the door? – Did she feel lonely? - Did he watch the movie? – Did your parents allow you to go out alone? - Did you parents come late? - Did Frank lift these pieces? – Did Gisselle and Alexandra travel to South America? – Did your friends fight for the car? – Did the students learn the lesson? Did he enjoy the game? – Did you order junk food? – Did the bus stop on the corner? – Did Gabriele lock the bathroom? – Did he want to eat? – Did the date start at 8 o'clock? – Did the students study for the quiz? – Did you find a new place? – Did Natalie lend you her book?

## **E. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con negative short answers:**

Did Patrick call Roxanne? – Did your sister spend a lot of time there? - Did you plan this party? – Did you boyfriend forgive you? -Did Tamara look for a new job? – Did he steal the money? - Did Gina live in your house? – Did Peter write the e-mail? - Did Anne throw the garbage away? - Did the boys swim together? - Did Patrick lift the bed alone? – Did you prefer the south? – Did her mother forbid her everything? - Did your father trust you? - Did our team win the game? - Did she get the results? - Did Charlie and Christine answer the questions? – Did it take a long time? - Did you pass by the hotel? – Did they cross the bridge slowly? – Did the child give the test? -Did Robert fly back home? -Did the baby wake during the night? - Did Peter smoke here? – Did Gisselle walk alone? – Did your mother teach you the lesson? -Did Tina visit her friends? – Did Frank tell you the address? - Did you love her? – Did the baby tear the paper? - Did the children understand the rules? - Did the nurse forget the schedule? -Did the tourist check out this morning? – Did you wait a lot? – Did she wear her new dress last night? - Did your friend read the book? Did the girls

cry? – Did you think about it? - Did the boy clean the apartment? – Did Rita open the restaurant? – Did you sign the letter? – Did he change clothes?

#### ***F. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative full answers:***

Did my mother cook pastry? – Did the concert begin on time? -Did you reserve a table for tonight? – Did you enclose everything? – Did he close the window? – Did the dog bite you? - Did she fix the computer? – Did you cry last night? – Did they play soccer? – Did they like the food? – Did Frank need something else? – Did Stefani break the window? -Did Rene check in yesterday? – Did your boss permit you to eat here? – Did you ask him? – Did he prepare the food? – Did Tamara visit her parents? – Did Walter and Anne walk here? – Did you smoke cigarettes? - Did you bring the documents? - Did the boys cross the street alone? – Did you answer the test? – Did you prefer coffee? – Did they arrive early? – Did they ask you for a bigger bed? – Did the men build the house alone? -Did you look at the mountain? – Did you stay with them? – Did you move the books? – Did you touch this piece of cake? – Did they wash the clothes? – Did you burn the cake? - Did they work with you? – Did Peter calculate the exact amount? – Did Helen buy the materials for the project? - Did the children try to do it? – Did Ron decide to go? – Did Tamara accept the proposal? – Did you live in Amsterdam? – Did you look for a better place? – Did you plan this? – Did you love him? – Did she choose the wrong alternative? - Did you lift the glasses?

#### ***G. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con negative full answers:***

Did Ralph enjoy the show? – Did they travel around the world? – Did Patrick come to the party? - Did you fly to Europe last holidays? -Did they join the group? – Did you parents allow you to have parties at home? – Did your mother forgive your mistake? – Did dinner cost a lot? - Did you watch the film? – Did he ask for a glass of water? – Did they stay at the hotel? – Did Jonas and Robert fight in the park? - Did Henry cut the cards for tonight meeting? - Did they move the furniture? – Did you hear the noise last night? – Did you accept cash? – Did you talk to your cousin? – Did Tamara get the bonus? – Did she have enough time to paint it? –Did you do your biology homework? - Did they check in last night? – Did you hide my new jacket? – Did Julie and Paul need a bigger house? – Did your daughter draw this? -Did Frank like Valparaiso? – Did you feel well last night? - Did the children play with your toys? – Did they drink all the wine? - Did the teacher give you homework? – Did you decide what to do? – Did Helen try to call you? – Did you sister drive the red car? - Did the account calculate it? – Did Theresa work in this company? – Did the lady wash the clothes? – Did we go to that beach? –Did Teresa find her shoes? - Did my mother feed the fish? -Did you touch the cell phone? – Did you forget about me?

#### ***H. Consteste las siguientes Wh- questions:***

How much did you enjoy the concert? - Who hurt my sister? – What hurt my sister? - Who did the stone hurt? – What did my sister hurt with? - Why did they accept that proposal? – Why did you keep thisboxes in the living room? – Where did she stay last night? – Where did my grandfather put my new cell phone? – When did she know the secret? – Where did Patrick meet Johanna? – How long did Tamar wait for John? – What time did Jill and Julie call Pat? – What did Frank learn in the class? – When did you arrive? – Why did your brothers leave early yesterday? – Why did you let him go alone to that place? - What did you move? – What did you prepare? – When did you sign the contract? – Where did you lose the bag? – What time did they open the store? – How did the students melt the gold? – Why did they close early? – How did you fix the microwave? – When did Mary make this mess? – Who did you look at? – What did you ask her? – What did they need for writing a letter? – Why did you ring me yesterday? - Why did you lie on her bed? - What

time did they check in? – How did your father pay? – What did Teresa mean with that attitude? – Who did you talk to last night? – Why did you wash his clothes? – How much money did you spend? - How long did your father lend you his car? What book did you read last month? - When did my son ride that white horse?

### ***I. Cambie las oraciones afirmativas a negativas:***

My father fixed my bicycle. – My brothers ran really fast. – The girl cried for her dog. – The captain said we have to work with you. – Gabriele asked for a new desk. – We saw you on the pub last night. – She cleaned all the windows. – My father sold our old house. - Julian checked in yesterday. – My family sent me a box full of presents for my birthday. –He enjoyed the party. – Frank sang on the karaoke bar last weekend. – My uncle called me in the morning. – They sat together the entire meeting. – I preferred the big car. – I slept on the sofa. – The bus stopped here. – The summer house smelt horrible. – He checked out before me. – Tom worked in that hotel. – Hans calculated the accounts. – I swam with my new bathing suit. – You tried hard enough. – The boss decided it. – Tracy and Richard spoke loudly. – He accepted me the way I am. – They walked on the beach. - The students understood the reasons. – The three girls looked for a better restaurant. – He planned this situation. – My mother told John the rules of this house. – I loved school. – We spent a lot of time working on it. – I took your camera last night. – We thought you were strange. – Robert taught everything I know about chemistry. – Linda woke me up this morning. – Henry and Frank stole our idea for the project.

### ***J. Cambie las oraciones negativas a afirmativas:***

I didn't enjoy the movie. – Sarah didn't wear high hills in the party. – He didn't join the two pieces. – My team didn't win the game last weekend. – My grandparents didn't allow me to run in the race. – My mother didn't write me a card for my birthday. – The piano lessons didn't begin at the usual time. – Hugo didn't watch the TV show. – My dog didn't bite you sister. – Gisselle didn't visit New York. – I didn't break the ruler. – They didn't prepare the baby shower. – Mathew didn't bring the materials for the project. – Tamara didn't lift the plants. – The movie didn't start at 10 o'clock. – I didn't travel to China. – We didn't cut our nails. – The new car didn't cost a lot of money. – He didn't complain yesterday. - My students didn't do their homework. – My daughter didn't draw the drawing for her art class. – Mike didn't drink wine. – Philip and Charles didn't wait for you. – I didn't love him. – They didn't plan this to happen. – Dam didn't look for it here. – Tracy didn't walk down the hill. – Peter didn't change the paper. – Peter didn't build this house. – Pat didn't lock the back door. – The football team didn't play. – My students didn't buy the books. – The taxi didn't stop. – Sandra didn't come to classes yesterday. – Helen and Robert didn't order the house. – We didn't drive back.

### ***K. Transforme las siguientes oraciones en preguntas:***

My parents accepted Louis. – I decided it. – I fell on the street. – He tried to do it. – Ronny calculated the correct amount. – My friend fed my dog last weekend. – He worked last weekend. – The children asked me that. – I felt sad last night. – The tourist checked in this morning. – I needed your help. – You fought for stupid things. – You liked the house. – The baby wanted to eat. – We found a perfect home. – Harry and Helga reserved a ticket fortonight. – My mother cooked yesterday. – Teresa flew back to Italy. – The students studied for the test. – Tamara called her parents. – The class finished on time. – The customers signed the contract. – Camille arrived late. – The secretary opened the office. – He charged the coffee to your account. – Walter preferred big dogs. – Peter washed his hair. – Tamar forgave me. - I moved the desk. – Gabriele touched the cat. – The housekeeper cleaned the bedroom. –Gina and Julie talked to me. – Aaron and Richard listened to their mother. - Frank stayed in the hotel. – The food looked fine. – I asked for a new jacket. – We went to the party. - The baby cried last night. – The lady fixed the cell phone. – She closed her purse. – The

children answered all the questions. – Tamara crossed the bridge. – I smoked last week. – Tom lived here. - I forgot the date of your birthday.

### **L. Transforme las siguientes oraciones utilizando el Question Word adecuado:**

The President arrived at 7 p.m. - The plant grew fast. – My mother prepared dinner. – You asked her the address. – Karla looked at me. - The mechanic fixed your car. – John closed the window. – Jake heard the loud noise. – You kept everything you need. – Tamara saw the present. - The dog hid my shoes under the bed. – My students read the books in the library. - My mother rang me last night. – My parents met themselves on a concert of rock. – You cooked lunch. – You studied French. – Tamara started the meeting. – Irene and Frank put the bags on the table. - We kept our luggage together. – We paid 20.000 dollars for dinner last week. – They bended the steal pipes. – You learnt how to use the machine. - Oliver wanted a sandwich. Tina locked the front door. – The bus stopped on that street. – They finished their work. – My grandfather lost all his money. - Christina rode the bicycle down the hill. – I run five miles when I was child. – Mathew bought two kilograms of peaches. – They had a lot of information about his death. – The boys listened to music. – Julian complained about the noise. – They gave me a piece of advice. - You made two apple pies. – They left because it was late. – They proposed a toast to Jerry. - She said it was good. - They sold all the furniture. – My father sent me the wrong card.

### **M. Forme oraciones con las siguientes palabras:**

for – tourists - The - restaurant. – looked – a -Chinese  
the -planned – parties. - Tamara - all  
listened - pop - to – Charles - music.  
stayed - home. - and - Karla - at – John – my  
computer. - new - for - Helen - asked - a  
lady – The – old - floor. - cleaned – the  
window. - Karen – the – opened  
white – I - preferred - black. - than  
taxi – stopped – front - The – house. - of – in - the  
mechanics - The - fixed - car. – your  
algebra - calculated - He - exercises. – some  
the - My - signed - contract. - mother  
permitted – to - be - The - late. - boss - us  
called – the - in - secretary – everybody - office. - The  
accepted - cards - The - credit – the - salesman  
what – do. - Alison - to - decided  
all - night. – cried - long - Babies  
and - cigarettes. - John - smoked - many - Patty

## *¿Cuándo se usan it is / it was?*

1) Se usa **it is / it was** para referirnos a la hora, los días de la semana, las fechas, etc.

Ejemplos:

**It is** Friday.

**It is** two o'clock.

**It was** 18th June yesterday.

2) También se usa **it is / was** para hablar de la temperatura, los fenómenos metereológicos y el tiempo en general.

Ejemplos:

**It is** -5 °C.

**It was** cold yeasterday.

**It is** raining.

3) Se usa también para indicar la distancia que hay de un punto a otro.

Ejemplos:

How far **is it** the museum?

**It is** five miles from here.

**It was** a long trip.

4) Cuando se quiere reemplazar o sustituir una frase completa.

Ejemplos:

Playing football is funny.

To be here is nice.

**It is** funny.

**It is** nice.

## *¿Cuándo se usan so/neither?*

Cuando se quiere añadir o afirmar algo a lo que ha dicho otra persona sin repetir las mismas palabras se utiliza **so / neither**.

1) Si lo que ha dicho la otra persona está en forma afirmativa se utiliza **so**.

Ejemplos:

- They have got a digital camera.

- **So** have I. (I have a digital camera too)

- He likes skiing.

- **So** do we. (We like skiing too)

- We went to the cinema yesterday.

- **So** did I. (I went to the cinema too)

Después de algunos verbos se puede emplear **so** para no repetir lo mismo que nos ha dicho la otra persona con verbos como **expect, hope, suppose, think**.

Ejemplos:

- My husband is arriving soon.
- Yes, I expect **so**. (I expect your husband is arriving soon)
  
- It is going to be warm tomorrow.
- Yes, I hope **so**. (I hope it is going to be warm tomorrow)
  
- I know the correct answer.
- Yes, I suppose **so**. (I suppose you know the correct answer)
  
- Is this my car?
- No, I don't think **so**. (I think it is not your car)

2) Si lo que nos han dicho está expresado en forma negativa se usa **neither**.

Ejemplos:

- I don't like Mexican food.
- **Neither** do I. (I don't like Mexican food either)

They didn't go to the opera last week.

- **Neither** did I. (I didn't go to the opera last week either)

### *¿Cómo preguntarse a uno mismo?*

El verbo **to wonder** sirve para preguntarse a uno mismo acerca de algo y puede utilizarse de acuerdo a los siguientes criterios. Es importante señalar que al usar **to wonder** no necesitamos generar una pregunta.

1) Expresar el deseo de saber algo.

Ejemplo:

I **wonder** how much this dress costs. (Me pregunto cuánto costará este vestido)

I **wonder** where my glasses are. (Me pregunto dónde estarán mis anteojos)

2) Expresar duda o especular sobre algo.

Ejemplo:

We **wonder** if she is there. (Me pregunto si estará ella allí)

She **wondered** whether there was a traffic accident. (Se pregunta si había un accidente de tránsito)

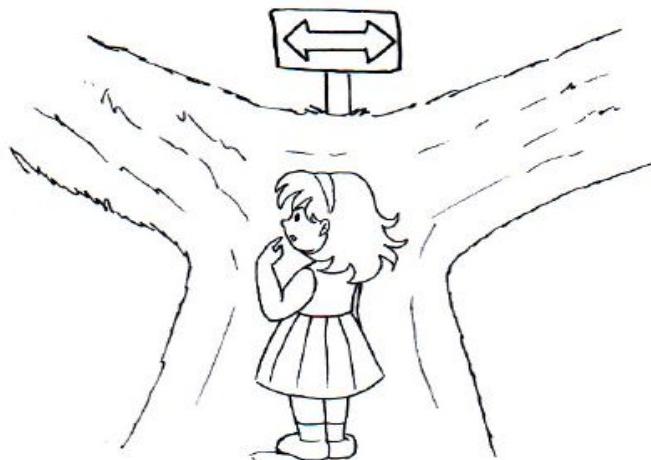
3) Expresar asombro, curiosidad o admiración sobre algo.

Ejemplo:

I **wonder** over the results of the project. (Me pregunto cómo resultará el proyecto)

I **wondered** why he looked so elegant. (Me pregunto por qué se veía tan elegante)

**I wonder which way is the right one.**



**I wonder who is knocking the door.**



## Past Continuous

### ¿Cómo se forma el Past Continuous?

El Past Continuous se forma con el pasado del verbo **to be** + un **gerundio**. (Ver en Lesson Six)

Present Simple del Verbo to be	Past Simple del Verbo to be
I am	I was
You are	You were
He is	He was
She is	She was
It is	It was
We are	We were
You are	You were
They are	They were

### Past Continuous

Past Simple verb to be + Gerund		
I	was	playing
You	were	playing
He	was	playing
She	was	playing
It	was	playing
We	were	playing
You	were	playing
They	were	playing

Como este tiempo verbal se forma con el verbo **to be** las preguntas, las respuestas, las oraciones negativas y las short answers se forman de igual manera como se hace con el verbo **to be**.

Examples:

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I was washing my hands.	I wasn't washing my hands. (was not)	Was I washing my hands?
You were washing your hands.	You weren't washing your hands. (were not)	Were you washing your hands?
She was washing her hands.	She wasn't washing her hands. (was not)	Was she washing her hands?
We were washing our hands.	We weren't washing our hands. (were not)	Were we washing our hands?
They were washing their hands.	They weren't washing their hands. (were not)	Were they washing their hands?

**Were you enjoying** the party?  
Yes, **I was enjoying** the party.  
No, **I wasn't enjoying** the party.

**Was she watching** TV?  
Yes, she was.  
No, she wasn't.

**Were they studying?**  
Yes, **they were studying**.  
No, **they weren't studying**.

**Were you reading** a book?  
Yes, you were.  
No, you weren't.

### *¿Cuándo se usa Past Continuous?*

En general, los tiempos progresivos sugieren acciones temporales e incompletas.

1) Se usa **Past Continuous** para hablar de situaciones que sucedieron durante un cierto tiempo en el pasado, pero no sabemos cuándo comenzaron ni cuándo terminaron.

Por ejemplo:

**I had dinner** at 7 o'clock. (**Past Simple**)

Al decir esto el interlocutor entiende que la acción de cenar comenzó y terminó en el pasado. Es decir es una acción completa.

En cambio, se dice:

**I was having dinner** at 7 o'clock. (**Past Continuous**)

Ahora estoy expresando que comencé a cenar a las 7, y que la cena se extendió hasta después de las 7. No se sabe cuándo comenzó ni cuándo terminó la acción de cenar.

2) También se puede dar la situación de tener dos o más acciones desarrollándose al mismo tiempo.

Por ejemplo:

**I was having dinner** and **he was watching** TV.

**They were listening** to music and **we were playing** tennis.

3) El **Past Continuous** se utiliza para expresar la interrupción de una acción por otra acción puntual en el pasado expresada en **Past Simple**. Para ello, se emplean frecuentemente las palabras **when**, **as** (cuando) y **while** (mientras).

Véase que **when** aparece acompañado del **Past Simple** mientras **while** y **as** son seguidos del **Past Continuous**.

Ejemplos:

<b>When</b> he knocked the door, we <b>were eating</b> .	We <b>were eating</b> <b>when</b> he knocked the door.
<b>As</b> she <b>was crossing</b> the street, a bus crashed her.	A bus crashed her <b>as</b> she <b>was crossing</b> the street.
<b>While</b> I <b>was cooking</b> , I had a excellent idea.	I had an excellent idea <b>while</b> I <b>was cooking</b> .

\* Los mismos verbos que no se usan para el **Present Continuous** tampoco se usan para el **Past Continuous**. (Ver *Lesson Four*)

4) Para acciones repetitivas se debe usar *Past Simple* y no el *Past Continuous*.

Ejemplo:

I read the news six times. (No *I was reading the news six times*).

5) Cuando se quiere hacer mención de una acción corta que tuvo lugar en el pasado se utiliza el ***Past Simple***, en tanto que si se quiere enfatizar el progreso de una acción ocurrida en el pasado se ocupa el ***Past Continuous***.

Ejemplo:

Alex watched TV yesterday. (***Past Simple***)

Yesterday at six o'clock, Alex **was watching** TV. (***Past Continuous***)

### ¿Cuando se usa used to?

1) Cuando se utiliza ***used to + el infinitivo de un verbo*** significa que una acción se ha repetido regularmente en el pasado pero ahora ya no existe o no ocurre más. Por esta razón siempre se emplea en tiempo pasado, pues no tiene forma presente.

Si se quiere hablar de algo que ocurre en el presente se usa directamente *Present Simple*, pero no se puede decir *I use to do*.

**I used to eat** a lot of apples, but now I prefer oranges. (Yo comía manzanas pero ya no)

**I used to go** there. (Yo solía ir allá)

Para hacer una oración negativa se puede construir con las siguientes estructuras:

**I used not to go** to the cinema every week. (Yo no iba al cine cada semana)

**I didn't use to go** to the cinema every week. (Yo no iba al cine cada semana)

**He never used to play** video games. (Él nunca jugaba video juegos)

Para formular una pregunta se procede de la siguiente manera:

**Did you use to eat** pizza when you were a child? (¿Solías comer pizza cuando eras niño?)

**Did he use to go** to the cinema when he was younger? (¿Solía él ir al cine cuando era joven?)

2) Asimismo, ***used to*** puede ir acompañado del verbo ***to be*** y quiere decir que alguien está habituado o acostumbrado a hacer algo (***used*** = adjetivo).

En este tipo de situaciones la expresión ***to be used to*** va seguida de un **gerundio** o de un **sustantivo**.

Nótese que cuando se escribe en ***be used to*** la partícula ***to*** no forma parte de un infinitivo sino que es una preposición.

**I am used to sleeping** late. (Estoy acostumbrado a dormirme tarde)

**He is used to living** alone. (Él está acostumbrado a vivir solo)

**She isn't used to getting** up early. (Ella no está acostumbrada a levantarse temprano)

**I am not used to the noise and traffic** of Santiago. (No estoy acostumbrado al ruido y al tráfico de Santiago)

**I am not used to his voice.** (No estoy acostumbrado a su voz)

También hay otros verbos como el get o become que suelen qacompañar a ***used to***.

Sally **got used to driving** on the left. (Sally se acostumbró después de un tiempo a conducir por la izquierda)  
It took me a long time to **get used to wearing** glasses. (Me tomó mucho tiempo acostumbrarme a usar anteojos)

Peter **became used to** his new life in Alaska. (Peter se acostumbró a su nueva vida en Alaska)

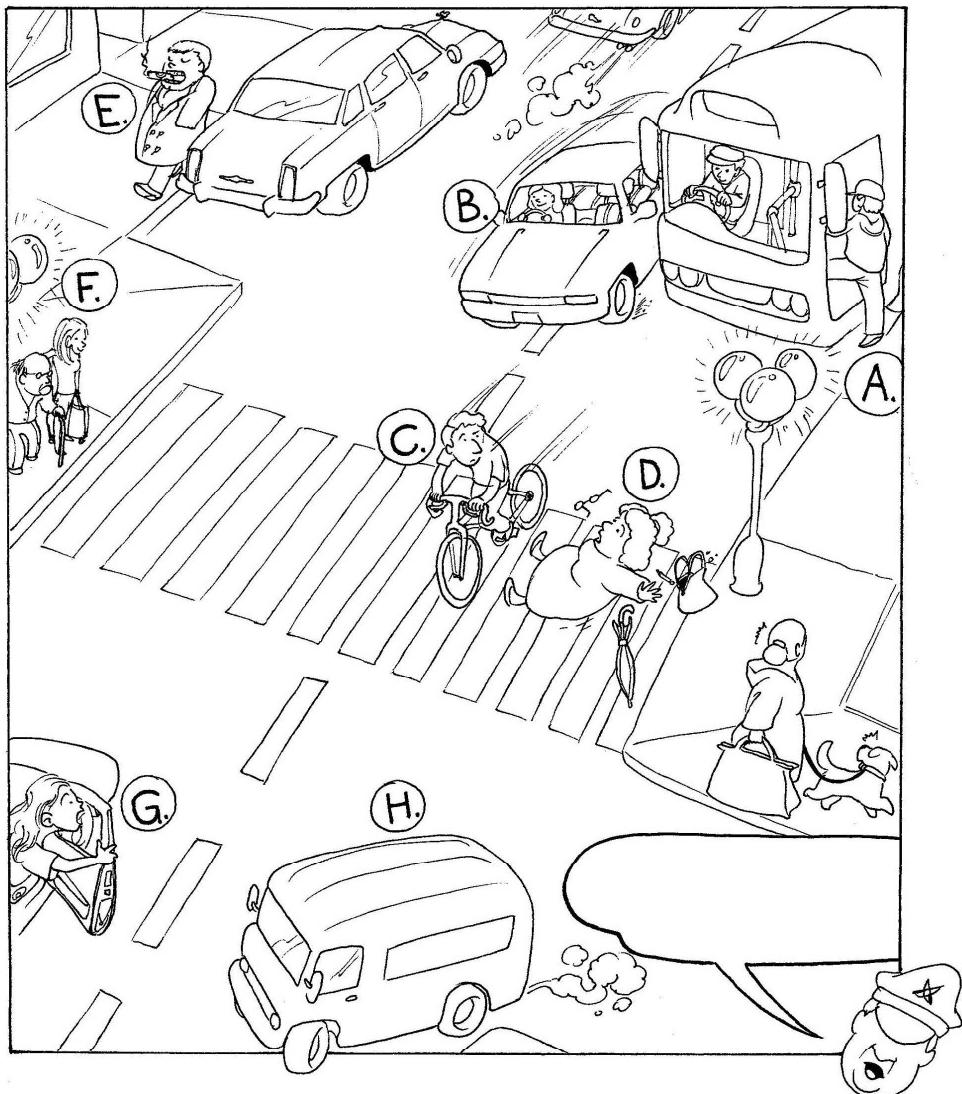
3) En algunos casos se usa ***used to*** en forma impersonal para expresar ideas generales.

**It's no use trying** to persuade me. (No vale la pena intentar persuadirme)

**It's no use asking** him to help you. (No vale la pena preguntarle a él por ayuda)

**It's no use worrying** about that project. (No vale la pena preocuparse por ese proyecto)

**Tell the story in past simple and past continuous.**



## **Exercises:**

### **Past Continuous**

#### **A. Desarrolle las siguientes conjugaciones según corresponda:**

I (wait). – We (wash). – Your sister and my brother (play). – My mom (cut). – He (do). – You and I (lie). – They (clean). - We (plan) – Tom and Sam (go). – I (brush). – Boys (laugh). – The manager (check in). – She (decide). – These kids (cry). – It (begin). – My neighbours (fight). – He (lose). – They (sell). – Your parents (allow). – We (come). - It (start). – The mouse (hide). – The architects (build). – Men (finish). – I (stay). – They (ask for). – Sally and Susan (looking). – The bat (die). – He (tidy). – We (forget). – My father (accept). – Cattle (eat). – The police (find). – The policeman (run). – Women (buy). – My mother (make). – They (bring). – Pat and Pam (have). – We (say). – You (tell). – He (read). – Fiona and Alice (swim). – It (catch). – My daughter (complain). – The Carpenter (fix). – We (sleep). – I (learn). – They (travel). – The shop (open). – I (try). – The employer (hire). – They (book). – We (enjoy). – Paul and John (listen). – They (stand). – He (fall). – The barometer (rise). – The door (shut). – The bird (fly). – It (blow).- Children (grow). – The telephone (ring). – He (keep). – My brothers (pay). – My friends (sit). – We (draw). – I (wear). – You (think). – He (send). – They (sign). – All of them (watch). – It (change). – She (get). – The train (pass). - The giant (take). – They (visit). – I (choose). – We (know).-

#### **B. Reemplace al sujeto de la oración y conjúguelo de acuerdo al pronombre dado:**

They were touching the glass with their dirty hands. (**He**) – The performance was starting at 8 p.m. (**Jean and Kelly**) – The government was accepting our terms. (**I**) – He was teaching tango. (**They**) – We were choosing our friends carefully. (**She**) – The show was beginning at 6 p.m. (**The concert and the speech**) – His flight was taking off in the morning. (**We**) – The writers were showing theirs books. (**I**) – My mom was choosing a new pair of shoes. (**They**) – She was thinking about her last boyfriend. (**My daughter**) - They were leaving at midnight. – (**The plane**) – They were hiding behind the tree. (**The ball**) – I was shutting the windows. (**Leila and you**) - He was riding her new bicycle. (**You**) – My partners were burning their notes (**I**) – Children were hitting the table. (**The kid**) – You were spending a lot of your time with her. (**His daughter**) – Paula and Kathy were stealing some money. (**She**) – A spider was biting me. (**The dogs**) – The ice was breaking behind us. (**The glasses**) – He was giving you a silver ring. (**My sisters**) - Rose was forgetting the gift. (**They**) – I was going to the opera. (**We**) - The driver was locking the door. (**You**) – A swallow was dying. (**The mosquitoes**) – I was fixing my watch. (**We**) – The engineers were calculating the weight. (**I**) – The waitress was charging the price on my bill. (**My friends**).

#### **C. Cambie las oraciones dadas a los tiempos solicitados:**

##### **C1. De Present Continuous a Past Continuous:**

I am calling my best friends. – My mother is not allowing me to go out. – We are planning to go to the Caribbean for our vacation. – He is reserving a place to see the ballet. – The owner is signing a new contract with them. – The managers are checking out at 10 a.m. – She is enclosing a letter for me. – The law is not permitting to smoke in public areas. – They are travelling around the world. – We are working hard to save some money.

## **C2. De Present Simple a Present Perfect a Past Simple y a Past Continuous:**

My mother prepares sushi. – I cross my legs. – You lift those heavy boxes. – I drive to the supermarket. – They live near from here. – We bend the paper. – Your friends ask for you. – They sell their old car. – People light the neighbourhood. – We meet you at the cafeteria. – You speak too fast. – I make a strong effort. – The little cat cries. – You change your thoughts. – I keep an eye on the children. – They teach us their new rules.

## **C3. De Past Continuous a Past Simple a Present Continuous y a Present Simple:**

All the boys were singing a sad song. - Children were going to a Catholic school. – He was accepting my terms. - She was calling her boss. – Joseph was eating some potatoes. We were drawing an elephant. – He was wearing a blue hat. - They were building a big monument. – Your friend Julie and Susan were dreaming about you. – We were paying attention to them. – They were sitting beside us. - His son was walking down street.

## **D. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative short answers:**

Were they coming with us? - Was he singing opera? - Was my daughter spending all the money? – Was she leaving behind her backpack? – Were you drinking vodka? – Was the dog hiding under the table? – Were they speaking loud? – Was she talking to you? - Were they washing their hair? - Was your friend cooking spaghetti? – Was my mother preparing dinner? – Was Peter smoking light cigarettes? - Was she closing the window? – Was your brother fixing his motorcycle? – Was she cleaning the kitchen? - Was the movie starting now? – Was he reading a funny magazine? – Were they taking care of the child? - Was she travelling by train? Was Anne arriving just in time? – Were they studying History? – Was he asking us? – Was he sitting on the bench? – Were you lifting that chair? – Was he watering the garden? – Were you arriving home? – Was he asking for a piece of advice? – Were you looking for a job? – Was Mary having a party? – Were we trying to do well? – Was she leaving the office? – Were you checking out on time? – Were they singing jazz? – Was he moving the car? – Were you visiting your family? – Was I teaching Dutch? – Was he cutting the flowers? – Were you doing good business? – Was he saying everything? – Were you standing here? – Was she making a chocolate pudding? – Was I putting that in his mouth?

## **E. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con negative short answers.**

Were the ants biting the children? – Were you stealing a box of chocolate? – Was he prunning the flowers? – Why was she waking up early? – Were they touching the silk? – Was he burning the leaves? – Were you doing exercises? – Was he catching a big fish? – Was she ordering the lunch? – Were they taking a break? – Were you waiting for me? – Was he driving a truck? – Was she cleaning her room? – Was he going out for lunch? – Were they meeting us now? – Was he changing his plans? – Was she deciding to go there? – Were you visiting me? – Was John waking Marie up? – Were you answering them? – Was she staring at you? – Was Jimmy calling you? – Were we flying on a plane? - Were he and I trying to do the best? - Were they washing the cups? – Was Caroline telling the truth? – Was he having dinner? – Was she locking the door? – Were they preparing the test? – Was the mechanic fixing my bicycle? – Were you shooting us? – Was he smoking Havana cigar? – Were you listening to rock music? – Was she asking many questions? – Were you fighting with them? – Was the child reading a story? – Was I travelling to La Serena? – Was the baby breaking the toy? – Was Sam knocking the door? –

Was he catching the pig? – Were you turning on the light? – Were the wolves howling at night? – Was the frog croaking? – Were the clouds moving fast?

#### **F. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative full answers.**

Were you starting the show? – Was he tidying his room? – Were Marie and Lucy telling lies to us? – Was the train moving so fast? – Were you spending the afternoon with your friends? - Was the customer touching the merchandise? – Were the kids watching a funny movie? – Was I changing my feelings? – Was she trying to lose weight? – Were the cicadas singing loud? – Was the architect building a long road? – Were we wearing the same sweaters? – Was the kid drawing a red ball? – Was the giant eating a lot of onions? – Were they paying attention to their teacher? – Was my mom buying me a candie? – Was her bedroom in a mess? – Were the duck and the goose fighting for food? – Was his father cutting the branches of the trees? – Were they talking nonsense? – Was I lending you my scarf? – Were you selling those things? – Were your son and my brother learning in class? – Was I crossing my fingers? – Were they answering the phone? – Was Pam finishing her scandal? – Was I asking her in a bad way? – Were your father and your brother preparing the barbecue? – Was he playing the cello well? – Were we working too much? – Was she shaking the tablecloth? – Were the kids planning to escape from here? – Was the school teaching our sons correctly? – Was she allowing her daughter to go out with us? – Was the bus waiting for us?

#### **G. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con negative full answers.**

Were Jim and I playing cards? – Was Sophie coming to classes? – Was he fixing his frames? - Were the boys painting the house? - Was she paying the present with a credit card? – Were they driving an expensive car? – Were the students wearing uniforms? – Was Peter telling me a nice story? – Were Sally and George getting into difficulties? - Was Katherine swimming in the open sea? – Was I reading an old newspaper? – Were my parents buying a new house? – Was Charles drinking red wine? – Were they bringing a lot of food? – Was Anne taking care of her little brother? – Were the girls learning how to sky? – Was I flying to San Francisco? – Were Mary and I selling candies and chocolates? – Was Susie sleeping on her bed? – Was I leaving my office at 8 o'clock? – Was John riding donkeys? – Were the kids drawing a dragon? – Was I living in Valparaíso? – Were the tourists travelling to Easter Islands? – Were they buiding a restaurant? – Were we watching an interesting movie? – Were the babies crying all the time? – Was the movie starting at 10 o'clock? – Was the housekeeper cleaning the sofa? – Was Susan calling me by cell phone? – Were they waiting for their friends? – Was my mother preparing breakfast? – Was Karen cooking fish? – Was he talking in a low voice? – Was she locking her closet?

#### **H. Consteste las siguientes Wh- questions.**

What colour of paint were we choosing? – What time was she arriving here? – How often was he coming? – How many hours were they flying? – How much time was I spending there? – Why was he cutting his hair? – Where were you travelling? – How was the mechanic fixing the truck? – When were they ordering junk food? – Who was enjoying the celebration? – Who was Celine talking with? – What were you waiting? – When were Peter and Jocelyn complaining of the kitchen conditions? – How was my friend looking at him? - How many days were they staying there? – How was she developing the subject? – When were we having a pyjamas party? – What kind of food were we eating? – Which of these bags were they buying? – How many things was I buying? – How much time were they spending out of their houses? – When were the prices rising? – How long were we calculating the damages? - How often was I reading? – Where were we meeting them? – How was he restoring the chapel? – How much were you selling this stuff? – When were they hearing us? – What date was she arriving? – What time was I waking up? – How was she diving? – Why was he hunting birds? – How fast was she riding the new motorcycle? – How many minutes were they waiting for us? – Who was hiding under the table? – How far were we running?

## **I. Cambie las oraciones afirmativas a negativas.**

Joe was sitting on a bench in the park. – They were putting those things on sale. – We were selling our car. – The kid was cutting the paper. – The animal was sleeping on the grass. – I was telling you all the reasons. – Fanny was throwing a ball - John and Tina were speaking us in a bad way. – My friend was inviting me for the wedding. - I was preparing my trip. – She was complaining about her look. – Paul and Francisca were enjoying the meeting. - He was ordering a glass of water. – We were listening to romantic music. – Your mother was asking for you. – The economists were calculating the financial loss.- They were closing the pub.- His parents were trying to find him.- The company was hiring new employees.- My boss was signing a profitable contract. – I was travelling from China to Nepal by train. – They were crossing the Andes mountain range. - Paula and you were living like a homeless. - The lions were moving into the desert. – The giraffe was eating leaves.- The little bear was running with his mother. – Babies were dreaming with giants. – The architects were building a school. - They were paying for her education. - They were changing their suggestions. – It was beginning at 8 p.m. – He was deciding to stay home. - You were visiting your family. – The ants were working on the garden. – She was washing her hands.

## **J. Cambie las oraciones negativas a afirmativas.**

I was not eating a hamburger. – The animal was not moving. - The train was not crossing the bridge. – They were not looking him.- My sister and her boys were touching a snake.- We were not taking care of the children.- The star was not falling.- We were not attending to your business.- She was not holding the ball with her hands. – You were not making mistakes. – I was lending her my new dress. – The duck was not hiding under the water. – Your heart was not beating strongly. - They were not finding the prisoners. – We were not shooting down birds.- They were not stealing at the supermarket. – I was not coming on time. – Her mother was not breaking her dreams. - Lucy and Sophie were not waking up early. - They were not shutting the door. – We were not leaving this place. – My father was not burning the bushes. – It was not biting the kid. - He was not letting his hair grow. - The dust was not flying in the air. - The fox was not catching the prey. – The phone was not ringing. - They were not bringing any box lunch. – I was not writing an essay. - We were not choosing the best prices. – The thieves were not taking my jewelry. – The old ladies were not waiting much time. – Rice was not growing without water. - The leaves were not drying. – Children were not cutting the apples.

## **K. Transforme las siguientes oraciones en preguntas.**

This man was standing here. – Boys were leaving the bar. – The thorn was hurting your finger. – I was burning my notes. – She was lending me her homework. – He was cleaning up the mess. – We were sleeping deeply. – Men were fighting with sticks. – The turtle was moving slowly. – You were showing your best pictures. – Your neighbour was asking for you. – The tigers were eating a gazelle. – The man was shooting birds down. – He was drinking whisky. – The consumption was rising. – She was falling down. – I was recording their conversation. – We were forgetting her anniversary. – My parents were accepting him. – My family was waiting a good answer. – The baby was touching my hat. – The feather was flying in the air. – We were going with them. – I was changing my mind. – Her nails were growing fast. – All the boys were watching the football match. – She was looking for a new apartment. – The show was starting on time. – My mom was giving me a silver ring. – The music was beating loud. – We were keeping quiet. – They were paying in cash. – The kid was drawing a rainbow. – The girl was wearing a grey T-shirt. – Boys were hitting the child. – People were building a new road. – The snake was moving fast. – Birds were singing loud. – Your daughter and my son were buying at the mall.

## **L. Transforme las siguientes oraciones a preguntas utilizando el ‘Question Word’ adecuado.**

They were finding a new apartment. – I was arriving here at 7 a.m. – The journalist was writing about that case. - Students were fighting in the street.- The newspapers were showing her photographies. – We were waiting him for three days. – She was cutting her mails. – It was blowing strongly. – The cat was catching the mouse in the garden. – They were arriving at 7 o'clock. – Hilda and Fiona were choosing the blue one. – She was spending half of her savings. – Peter was asking for Celine. – He was breaking her hopes yesterday. – We were driving 50 kilometers. – She was looking those pants. – I was bringing the red one. - Kelly was coming with us. – The lady was making the effort. – She was buying a new fridge. – We were taking care of them for a long time. – They were flying to Spain. - You were crossing the chain mountain walking. – You were canoeing the river down. – She was waiting her cousin. – I was not doing anything. – Your parents were going to the South yesterday. - He was buying 30 cows. – She was selling her ring by internet. – You were showing the house. - He was painting it in red. – I was bringing some wine for the dinner. – The kids were throwing stones in the park. - The thieves were stealing in the drugstore. – The policeman was catching him immediatly.

## **M. Forme oraciones con las siguientes palabras.**

eating – on - He - the - was - restaurant.

a – the - girl – kiosk. – newspaper - The – buying – was – in  
his - boy – with - was – tennis. – playing - That – friends.

was – The – fixing – engine. – mechanic - the

my – Sara – was – house. - cleaning -

grandmother – of - was - His – wine. - drinking - a - glass  
complaining – his - about – was – problems. - Peter

having – time.– a - was – nice - She

parents – door. - were - shutting – the - My -

was – little - speaking – German - boy. - I – a - with  
saving – some - were- They – money.

was - an - He – movie. - watching – interesting

cards – in - were – the - playing – class. - Children

test. - were – the - themselves – for - hard - Students – preparing

painting – in - the – blue. - was – door - Christian

new - was – motorcycle. - Zoe – her – riding

was – in - mother – a - working – big - My – bank.

and – were – gift - paying – Caroline – cash. - Susan - the – in

questions. - asking – me – many - She – was

guard - The – gate.- was – security – closing - the

**LESSON SIX**  
**Present Perfect**  
**Prepositions**

*¿Cómo se forma el Present Perfect?*

El **Present Perfect** se forma con el **Present of to have + Past Participle**.

**Present Verb To Have + Past Participle**

I	have	met
You	have	met
He	has	met
She	has	met
It	has	met
We	have	met
You	have	met
They	have	met

Have you read that book?  
Yes, I have read that book.  
No, I haven't read that book.

Has he read that book?  
Yes, he has read that book.  
No, he hasn't read that book.

Have you read that book?  
Yes, I have.  
No, I haven't.

Has he read that book?  
Yes, he has.  
No, he hasn't.

Examples:

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I have (I've) played.	I haven't played.	Have I played?
You have (You've) played.	You haven't played.	Have you played?
He has (He's) played.	He hasn't played.	Has he played?
She has (She's) played.	She hasn't played.	Has she played?
It has (It's) played.	It hasn't played.	Has it played?
We have (We've) played.	We haven't played.	Have we played?
You have (You've) played.	You haven't played.	Have you played?
They have (They've) played.	They haven't played.	Has they played?

## *¿Cuándo se usa el Present Perfect?*

1) Se usa el **Present Perfect** cuando estamos pensando en el pasado y en el presente al mismo tiempo.

Ejemplos:

The floor is wet. Peter **has dropped** a glass of water.

Mary has red hair. She's had **her hair dyed** this morning.

They look tired. They've **walked** twenty kilometres.

2) Se usa también **Present Perfect** para expresar una idea de término o el logro de una acción.

Ejemplos:

Finally! He's **passed** the test!

At last, I've **finished** reading this book.

Have you **done** all the homework? Yes, I **have**.

He's **learnt** the song. Now, he is ready to join the choir.

3) Además, para anunciar noticias o eventos recientes.

Ejemplos:

Louis's **won** the lottery.

Luckily! It's **started** to rain!

There **has been** a fire at the central market.

4) Para indicar que una acción se ha hecho repetidas veces en el pasado hasta el presente.

Ejemplos:

I've **sent** thirty mails since breakfast.

This company **has presented** this play twenty times in the same theater up to now.

My friend **has written** in this newspaper since 1985.

5) Para hablar de acciones o situaciones que se realizaron en el pasado, cuyos efectos se mantienen en el tiempo hasta el presente.

Ejemplos:

How long **has he been** a dentist? He's **been** a dentist for twelve years.

I've **worked** here for exactly twenty years, three months and seven days.

He is very radical. He's **belonged** to that party since he was a teenager.

## *¿Qué expresiones son más comunes con Present Perfect?*

Con este tiempo verbal se usan las siguientes expresiones: **for, since, just, recently, lately, this week, ever, never, sometimes, occasionally, up to now, till now, so far**, etc.

Ejemplos:

I haven't met her **for** two months. (**for** se emplea para señalar un cierto período de tiempo)

He has gone there **since** he was a child. (**since** significa desde un punto en el tiempo)

We have **already** eaten. (**already** se usa en oraciones afirmativas)

They haven't eaten **yet**. (**yet** se usa para las interrogaciones y con oraciones negativas)

She has **just** come back from holiday. (**just** se usa para indicar que algo acaba de ocurrir)

It has happened **recently**. (**recently** señala que algo ocurrió recientemente)

I haven't eaten junk food ***lately***. (*lately* indica algo que ha estado ocurriendo últimamente)  
I have seen her twice ***this week***. (*this week, this month, this year* se refiere a un hecho ocurrido en el período de tiempo señalado.)  
Have you ***ever*** been in Japan? (*ever* se utiliza para preguntar si alguna vez ha realizado una acción)  
I've ***never*** seen her. (*never* se emplea para decir que nunca ha realizado tal acción)  
We've ***sometimes*** thought of moving to Canada. (*sometimes* significa algunas veces)  
He's ***occasionally*** visited his mother. (*occasionally* significa ocasionalmente)

### ***¿Qué diferencia hay entre already y yet?***

Ambos términos significan **ya**. La diferencia radica en su uso. ***Yet*** se utiliza en preguntas y respuestas negativas y ***already*** en respuestas afirmativas.

Ejemplos:

Have you had breakfast ***yet***?  
Yes, I have had breakfast ***already***.  
No, I haven't had breakfast ***yet***.

### ***¿Cuándo se usa ever y never?***

***Ever*** se usa en preguntas y ***never*** en las respuestas negativas.

Ejemplos:  
Have you ***ever*** seen King Kong?  
Yes, many times. (Yes, I've seen many times)  
No, never. (No, I've ***never*** seen King Kong)

Al preguntar por hechos que se repiten se usa el *Present Perfect* con: ***How often....?*** y ***How much....?***

How ***often*** have you been in love in your life? I've been in love three times.

How ***much*** have you earned? I've earned \$ 5.000.

### ***¿Cúales son las diferencias entre el Present Perfect y el Past Simple?***

1) No se puede usar ***Present Perfect*** si no estamos pensando en el tiempo presente.

Sin embargo, ésto no quiere decir que se refiera a hechos recientes sino que puede usarse para eventos que han ocurrido hace muchos años pero dichos eventos tienen relevancia en el presente.

Por ejemplo:

The cat **has eaten** your supper. Se usa el ***Present Perfect*** porque es una acción terminada que seguramente tiene importancia en el presente para el hablante.

The cat **ate** a cookie. En este caso hablamos de una acción terminada que no tiene ninguna importancia en el presente y solamente es un antecedente informativo o anecdótico.

We've ***studied*** hard to pass the examination. (El examen todavía no se da)

We studied hard to pass the examination. (El examen ya se tomó)

We've ***borrowed*** the money for the bank to buy a house. (La compra se va a realizar ahora que tenemos el dinero)

We borrowed the money for the bank to buy this house. (La compra ya se efectuó)

2) No se usa **Present Perfect** con palabras como: *yesterday, when, last yesterday, last week, in 1995 o then*, porque el éste alude al presente y estas palabras representan ideas sobre el pasado.

Por ejemplo:

Have you **seen** Mary recently? I saw her yesterday.

George **has hurt** his leg. He is in hospital. George hurt his leg last week.

I've **got** a cold. I feel terrible. I got the cold last week.

3) Generalmente usamos el **Present Perfect** cuando estamos pensando en eventos del pasado cuyos efectos están ligados al presente.

Por ejemplo:

She looks younger. She **has had** her hair cut.

He **hasn't got** up yet. He worked until late yesterday.

4) Sin embargo, se prefiere el *Past Simple* cuando identificamos la persona, cosa o circunstancia responsables de una situación presente porque estamos pensando en el pasado (causa) y no en el presente (resultados)

Ejemplos:

Look what Peter **has brought** to me! He bought it on sale. (Se pone énfasis en el regalo)

Who brought you that? (Se enfatiza en la acción ocurrida en el pasado)

He is very happy. He's **received** a post card from his wife.

The postman came two hours ago.

5) Usamos el Past Simple cuando nos referimos a realidades y no expectativas.

Por ejemplo:

The play is not as interesting as we expected. (Nunca se dice *as we have expected*)

You promised to me! (Nunca se dice *you have promised it to me*)

6) No se usa el **Present Perfect** para contar relatos, cuentos o anécdotas.

Ejemplo:

Once upon a time there was a little girl who dreamt with a big palace and wanted to have a rich husband.

So Little Red Riding Hood kissed her mother good, bye. She took a basket of cookies, and walked along the path in the woods to Granny's house.

So Chicken Little and Henny Penny hurried together down the road toward the King's castle.

7) La decisión de usar el **Present Perfect** o el *Past Simple* siempre la va a tener el hablante porque únicamente él sabe como quiere entregar la información.

### *¿Qué son las preposiciones?*

**Las preposiciones** son palabras que se usan para describir un movimiento, un lugar o un tiempo.

Se usa una **preposición + un nombre** para decir dónde se hace, dónde está algo o cuándo ocurre. Hay que tener en cuenta que las preposiciones en inglés no siempre las mismas utilizadas en español.

En algunas ocasiones una preposición puede tener uno o varios sentidos comosucede con la preposición **in**. A veces dos o tres palabras constituyen una preposición como **next to, in front of, on top of**.

### **¿Cuáles son las preposiciones de movimiento?**

Son aquellas preposiciones que describen la acción que ocurre y siempre acompañan a los verbos de movimiento como *walk, run, drive, sail* y *jump*.

Se pueden señalar las siguientes: **into, out of, on, through, round, towards, away from, off, up, down, over, under, across y along.**

Ejemplos:

The dolphin jumps **into** the swimming pool. (dentro)

The mouse jumps **out of** his house. (fuera)

Don't walk with your dirty feet **on to** the new carpet. (sobre)

He passed **through** the window. (pasar a través)

She rode her motorcycle **round** the traffic circle. (alrededor)

We are driving **towards** the mountains. (hacia)

Run **away from** the fire! (lejos)

The ball is running **off** the line. (fuera de)

They climbed **up** the roof. (arriba)

I go **down** the stairs. (abajo)

The plane flies **over** the hospital. (sobre)

The ship sails **under** the bridge. (debajo)

She is running **along** the park. (a lo largo)

He walks **across** the street. (a través)

### **¿Cuáles son las preposiciones de lugar?**

Las **preposiciones de lugar** son las que describen dónde se encuentra algo o alguien y siempre van después de los verbos *be, stand, lie y sit*.

Entre ellas destacan las siguientes: **above, on, on top of, under, behind, in front of, over, below, beside e in.**

Ejemplos:

The picture is **above** the shelf. (sobre)

My office is **on** the left. (a, sobre, en, etc)

There is a envelope **on top of** the books. (encima)

The baby is **under** the table. (debajo)

The boy is **behind** the chair. (detrás)

My father is sitting **in front of** us. (enfrente)

There is a lamp **over** the table. (sobre)

There is a vase **below** the lamp. (bajo)

There is a sofa **beside** the chair. (o **by / next to** = al lado de)

Who is the man **in** that photograph? (en)

### **¿Cuáles son las preposiciones temporales?**

Las preposiciones temporales se usan para indicar a qué hora o fecha ocurre algo.

Ellas son: **in, at, on, until, by, during y for.**

1) Se usa **in** (en) para hablar de los días, los meses, los años, las estaciones y los siglos o para indicar cuánto falta para que algo ocurra.

Ejemplos:

Your birthday is **in** August.

I visit you **in** four days.

We read the newspaper **in** the morning.

2) Se utiliza **at** (a) para indicar la hora, las festividades, con **night, the beginning, the end** y **weekend**.

Ejemplos:

I visit my parents only **at** Christmas.

I get up **at** 8 a.m. and I usually go to bed **at** midnight.

What do you do **at** the weekends?

3) Se emplea **on** para hablar de los días, fechas completas o con un día de la semana + **morning, afternoon, etc.**

Ejemplos:

She usually goes to the cinema **on** Friday.

Our meeting is **on** 15th June.

We will see them **on** Tuesday morning.

4) Se ocupa **until** o **till** para expresar que algo ocurre hasta un momento determinado.

Ejemplos:

I kept running **until** 11.00 o'clock.

I waited **till** he came.

5) Se utiliza **by** para indicar que algo ocurrió antes de / no más tarde de.

Ejemplos:

I came **by** midday.

He went **by** the time the bus passed.

6) Para hablar de un período de tiempo se usa **during** (dentro de / durante).

Sólo se puede usar **during** si estamos respondiendo a la pregunta **When?** (*during the morning, during December, etc.*)

Ejemplos:

I haven't eaten **during** the whole day.

I always swim **during** my holidays.

7) Para señalar períodos de tiempo se usa **for**

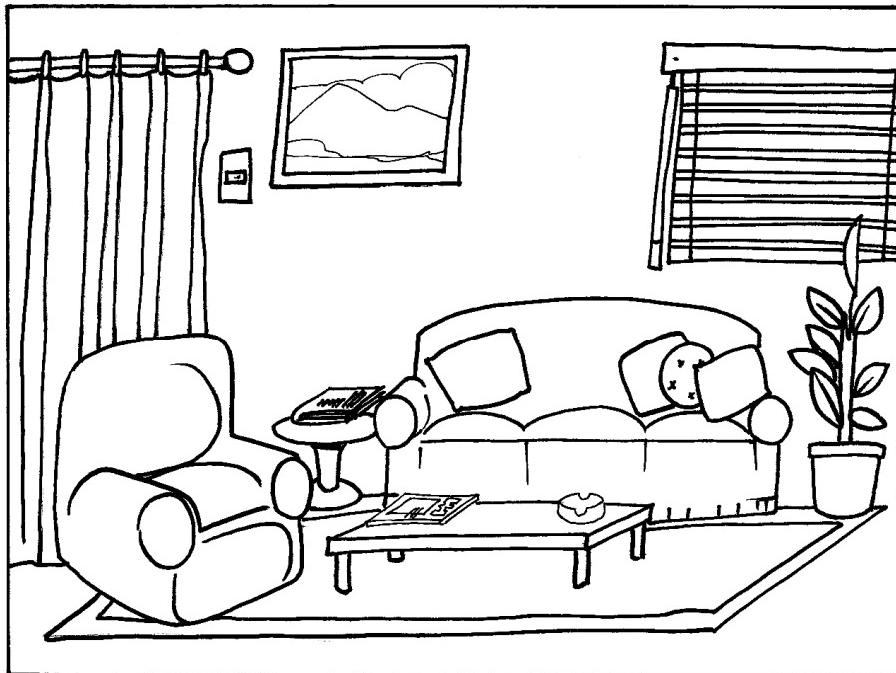
Sirve para contestar a la pregunta **How long?** (*five hours, six months*)

Ejemplos:

I have studied **for** three hours.  
They only waited **for** two hours.

Where is.....?

Where are.....?



## Exercises Present Perfect

### **A. Desarrolle las siguientes conjugaciones según corresponda.**

I (work), He (sleep) – You (write) – It (grow) – We (speak) – Your kids (fight) – The stick (blow) – Your brother (hear) – They (leave) - We (begin) – I (hurt) – Your family (show) – You (know) – I (take) – Mary and Fanny (choose) – The tourists (fly) – The cell phone (ring) – Louis (bring) – Children (hide) - I (ride) – Peter (sing) - You (break) – They (shoot) – The boy (steal) – We (come) – They (lose) – She (complain) – We (understand) – My sister (drink) - You (wait) – He (order) – Sally and Katy (stay) - We (try) – It (go) – They (charge) – I (accept) – We (allow) – You (book) - They (forget) – I (have) – The heart (beat) - We (cut) – You (light) – John (keep) – Your family (teach) - We (do) – I (learn) – He (sell) – They (meet) – I (wear) - We (make) – It (cost) – You (see) – I (give) – It (rise) – Your parents (ask) me – Your mother (live) – They (need) – You (play) – We (finish) – She (move) – I (visit) you – You (buy) – His teacher (draw) – I (pay) – Your grandmother and you (think) – Kelly and I (sit) – The baby (cry) – The plumber (fix) – We (calculate) – They (join) – The man (charge) – I (arrive) – You (check out) – Your parents (send) – She (tell) – We (travel) – Susan and Pat (open) – Children (read) – We (say) – I (want) – You (hear) – They (pass) – The housekeeper (clean).

### **B. Reemplace al sujeto de la oración y conjúguelo de acuerdo a la información dada.**

They have played rugby. (**My friend**) - He has woken up in a bad mood. (**I**) - This bus has passed in this city since 1997. (**They**) - I have lived in Santiago for 3 years. (**We**) – All the boys have changed their T-shirts. – (**He**) – The film has started. (**It**) - They have already eaten. (**We**) - My mom has just made a cup of coffee. (**Your sisters**) – Your friends have washed all the dishes. (**Sarah**) - It has already left. (**My sons**) - The woman has opened the grocery. (**We**) - I have already smoked two cigarettes. (**They**) – The postman has not come yet. (**You**) – We haven't answered your questions. (**Bob**) – He hasn't got up yet. (**The chickens**) – They have just come back from holiday. (**She**) – The opera has already begun. (**We**) – The lady has bought a souvenir. (**You**) – The taxi has arrived. (**I**) – We have borrowed the money from the bank. (**Patty**) – He has had an operation. (**You and I**) – You have grown. (**The kid**) – I have forgotten your name. (**He**) – Joel has cut his finger. (**They**) – They have not finished yet. (**Lucy**) – He has lost the key. (**We**) - We haven't had breakfast yet. (**The boy**) – The plane has arrived late. (**They**) – It has moved slowly. (**I**) – The babies have cried a lot. (**The baby**) – They have not found the kid. (**Your father**) – Prices have risen. (**The price**) – The girls have held the ball with their hands. (**He**).

### **C. Cambie las oraciones dadas a:**

#### **C1. Present Continuous, Present Perfect, Past Simple y Past Continuous.**

We drink red wine. – You learn fast. – Then baby hides his toys under his bed. – They leave early in the morning. – You ring the bell in the morning. - He paints the ceiling black - They call the police. – I prepare all kind of food. – We break her heart. – I write down my ideas. – The child spends his time playing cards. – The children read funny stories. – The dog sits beside us. – The trip finishes on Friday. - She pays attention. – Your sisters eat peanuts. – We visit our cousins. –

## **C2. Past Simple, Past Continuous, Present Continuous y Present Simple.**

He has washed his hands. – The weather has become worse. – You and I have looked it through the windows. – I have thrown my pillow. – Tina has done many things wrong. – The kid has drawn a tree. – They have cried a lot. – We have included her in our project. – You have calculated the expenses. – I have closed my umbrella. – Your friend has made all the musical arrangement. – Sonia has fallen in love with her friend Mario.

## **C3. Present Simple, Present Perfect, Past Simple y Past Continuous.**

You are trying to do your best mark. – My boss is hiring a new secretary. – We are signing a risky agreement. – The counselor is giving me some advice. - My little sister is sleeping in her carrycot. – We are accepting their points of view. – You are choosing a suit. – She is fighting with her neighbours. – I am taking my time. – We are planning to go trekking. – My mom is cleaning my clothes. – His boyfriend is enclosing a photographie.

## **C4. Present Perfect, Past Simple, Past Continuous y Present Simple.**

We are drinking rum. – Sarah and Jessie are buying their dog. – I am going to see El Quixote. – They are lending some money. – She is telling us a nice story. - He is sitting in front of us. – You are adding too much salt. – The sun is tunning her face. – We are selling our house. – The doorbell is ringing. – The tourits are coming early. – He is burning the documents. – She is bringing a bottle of whisky. – You are giving me a chance. -

## **D. Consteate las siguientes preguntas con affirmative short answers.**

Have you done all the exercises? – Has he slept well for two hours? – Have we eaten some toasts? – Have they gone to the class? – Has the weather become cloudy? – Has he forbidden their behavior? – Have I forgotten the key computer? – Has Sally lost the way back? – Have we looked in a good shape? – Has the pet run behind you? – Has Alex spoken to you in Russian? – Have I seen all the facts? – Has your brother lit his room? – Have your parents paid the bill? – Has your mother taught you good manners? – Have I flown by a hot air ballon? – Has the mosquito bitten her cheek? – Has the music beaten strong? – Have we met him at the mall center? – Have you hurt your leg? – Has she had some trouble? – Has your daughter grown a few inches? – Has your grandmother heard a strong noise? – Has the performance begun yet? – Has your family shown interest? – Have the horses eaten the bushes? – Have we left this city by train? – Has Patty shut the book? – Have your cousins said all about it? – Have the arquitects built a big dam on the river? – Have we been worried? – Has Susan come to the meeting on time? – Have they ever driven a big truck? – Have I known about her before? Has he got many friends? – Have we got enough petrol? – Has the flight arrived yet? – Has the cat been near us?

### **E. Conteste las siguientes preguntas con negative short answers.**

Have they swum in the Mediterranean? – Has this team lost all the games? – Have you ever ridden a camel?  
– Has your friend changed his plans? – Has the president made an important speech recently? – Has he worn a smoking jacket? – Have all of them seen an unidentified flying object? – Have I taken all my holidays? – Have they won the match? - Have the companies made a lot of money? – Has your doctor told you the good news? – Have I thought correctly? – Has she hurt her arm? – Have you hit him with your hands? – Have the thieves stolen the diamonds? – Have we torn the curtain? – Have you ever been in Japan? – Has the LCD cost much money? – Have the security guard caught the prisoners? – Has the grass grown enough? – Has the child kept quiet? – Have the people shown respect to them? – Have I decided to assist alone to the ceremony? – Has the weather been worse lately? – Have Mark and Paulina learnt biology? – Has she written a letter recently? – Have you done the right thing? – Have we chosen the proper person? - Have they heard about those kinds of cases? - Has she finished the gym classes? – Has that strange person run away from us? – Have you taken enough time? – Has your mom bought a new toy? – Has the sun burnt much your skin? – Have the crocodiles eaten the little gazelle?

### **F. Consteate las siguientes preguntas con affirmative full answers.**

Has it rained the last two weekends? – Have you ever been in Nepal? – Has he made up his mind yet? – Have you handled oxygen cylinders carefully? – Have they kept it in secret for twenty years? - Have you been there before your birthday? – Has she got good chances lately? – Has your friend cried for you? – Has it been all right recently? – Have you broken their hearts yet? – Have they had good intentions lately? – Have you stayed in the South for five years? – Have my parents made those plans since I was a child? – Has the financial adjustment meant public welfare? – Has the fireman helped the old woman? – Have the police run after the smugglers? – Has the news frozen your blood? – Has the bear hidden the prey into a dark cavern? – Have your sisters looked for a new apartment yet? – Has the horse knocked me over? - Have the prices got up lately? – Have you ever caught a strong flu? – Have your brothers made a lot of mistakes lately? – Has the programme started on time? – Has she known the true since she was a child? – Have the soldiers run away? – Has the inspector found the secret? - Have Suzie and Karen drunk alcohol lately? – Has your mother opened the envelope? – Has your teacher shown the new project? – Have they sold their properties? – Have they moved slowly since last week?

### **G. Consteate las siguientes preguntas con negative full answers.**

Have you done a favour to them recently? - Have they had breakfast yet? – Has she slept well lately? – Have you ever dreamt about that horrible thing? - Has he stood there for six hours? – Has the kid seen the gift yet? – Have I tried hard to achieve a better position? – Has the owner signed a new agreement? – Have your plants grown enough? – Have you reserved the film for this day? – Has your girlfriend called her family recently? – Has this journalist said everything in the trial? – Has the doctor put me on diet since February? – Have we woken up early these days? – Have your friends allowed you to film the performance? - Has the captain ever attended to this course? – Have I got free time these days? – Has she brought enough snacks for three days? – Have the pigeons flown since they had five months? – Have your sons prepared the meal yet? – Have you usually complained about bad service? – Have we waited this chance for a long year? – Have the accountants caculated all the taxes? – Has your dog ever bitten a child? – Have they studied this book to become rich in fifteen days? – Have they woked hard lately? – Has that old man ever heard a thing like that? - Has your partner satt beside you for two years? – Has the butler organized the menu yet? – Have Marie and Hilda paid the bill? – Have we ever understood those domestic problems? – Have you visited the locksmith yet? – Have they finished the work yet?

## **H. Conste las siguientes Wh- questions.**

What date have you arrived here? – What colour of paint has she chosen? – How many times have your parents visited you? – How fast has he learnt to drive his new motorcycle? – When have they come to this country? – Where has Patrick learnt these computer skills? – Which one of these maps have we bought? – What kind of food have my boss brought? – Why has the thief tried to force the lock? – Who has sent me this lovely card? – How long have you read that journal? – How often have we made this same voyage? – What have they done recently? – Where has your niece gone for five days? – How much money have we spent since last week? – How has she taught them Chinese? – What time have you arrived? – Why have I eaten only junk food for two weeks? – What has Simon thought about that problem? – How have they cleaned the mess? – How tall have the bushes grown the last six months? – How have we paid the expensive bill? – Which physical training have you done recently? – When has she sung opera music? – What kind of mistake have the smugglers made? – Where have the police found the diamonds? – How much money have those trucks cost you? - How far have we driven with our old cars? – What day have I flown to Canada? – What time has the plane landed? – How much money have they lost? – How long have we walked?

## **I. Cambie las oraciones afirmativas a negativas.**

We have cried many times lately. - The astronaut has already discovered a strange stone. – Our neighbours have planned the party since five days. - My mom has taught me good manners since I was a child. – They have understood the main reasons. – His father has allowed him to go out late since he was sixteen years. – They judge has given him the permission to visit my daughter. – The attorneys have already found a clue in that case. – My boss has travelled around the world. – He has held the dumbbell with his left hand for 2 minutes. – My heart has beaten strongly. – The kids have already drawn a panda bear. – They have dreamt about good things lately? – I have eaten lobster many times. – She has already ridden an elephant. – They have finished his pending task. – You have done a lot of damage. – Children have cut all the fruit. – The hunters have shot many swallows since last week. – Wheat has grown more than corn. – Goose has flown to the North. – Cheetahs have fought with lions for food recently. – My sister has prepared some sandwiches. – The chef has already cooked five boxes of sushi. – My cell phone has rung many times. – All of us have slept since we came back home. – I have been to the same pub since I was a teenager. – We have paid much attention to the class. – He has brought his umbrella all this week. – Dalila has bought this coat recently. – I have just had a cup of tea.

## **J. Cambie las oraciones negativas a afirmativas.**

They haven't eaten properly. – It hasn't cost you too much. – You haven't walked 30 kilometres yet. – You haven't seen that film yet. – The postman hasn't come yet. – I haven't been to the dentist yet. – The concert hasn't begun yet. – We haven't been to the church since 2007. – They haven't gone to the theatre for three months. - The priest hasn't asked for you. – Your nails haven't grown too much. - The bomb hasn't exploded yet. – She hasn't understood the speech. – They haven't seen an UFO for months. – I haven't swum since last summer. – You haven't said a word during this lesson. – My parents haven't lived here since 1998. – The president hasn't visited other countries. – This team hasn't won a match. – The flight hasn't arrived yet. – The gardeners haven't cut the grass. – The housekeeper and his husband haven't helped me for a whole month. - The taxi hasn't come yet. – They haven't shut the supermarket. – Our telephone hasn't rung since last Monday. – The kids haven't got up yet. – You haven't had a holiday for a year. - We haven't bought a new notebook. – He hasn't paid the bill. – Sally hasn't tried a little caviar. – Your sister and my son haven't dreamt with that important opportunity. – Peggy hasn't driven her car alone. – People haven't shown us the way to make progress.

## **K. Transforme las siguientes oraciones en preguntas.**

Those men have done justice with their own hands. – His partner has made a fortune. – The society has permitted them to do little. – The police have already given us a few orders. – The law has allowed us to do justice. – The country has kept alert. – The organizations have already finished their financial assistance. – The external groups have already sent him a defiant project. – The cows have run out the fence. - I have left there my identity card. – They have lost their passports. - That company has made new plans. – A sea lion has bitten a child. – The wound has hurt his foot for four days. – His shoes have smelt very bad since ever. – The baby has thrown the meal out of the dish since last ten minutes. - Children have felt frightened lately. – My mom has worried about my health. – We have paid attention to the teacher for two hours. – He has taught his new point of view. – I have known all his problems since last year. – The teenagers have torn their T-shirts playing rugby. – My brother has brought a new computer game. – My boss has already called his wife. – The secretary has written several e-mails. – I have learnt a little more about the human nature. – The judge has told me a piece of news. – The boxer has knocked out his rival. – The president has announced a new offer. – The doctors have begun a complicated operation. -

## **L. Transforme las siguientes oraciones a preguntas utilizando el Question Word adecuado.**

They have visited their old friends. – We have stayed there for a week. – He has been to the circus on Friday. – The training has begun since last weekend. – She has watched Cinderella. – We have cooked a barbecue in the garden. – They have bothered about that the electricity for three hours. – His best friend has hit him. – I have taken this medicine for two weeks. – We have driven 80 kilometres. – You have spent almost all your money. – We have bought a pair of shoes and a new pair of pants. – She has already prepared the power point presentation. – The policeman has caught the thieves easily. – I have tried a pint of red wine. – I have stood in front of that door for fifteen minutes. – They have gone to the theatre. – The plane has landed on time. – My mother has prepared pizza with olives. – I have chosen the yellow one. – He has made a dishonest proposal. – She has made many mistakes lately. – I have never tried Arabic food. – We have brought two boxes of cigarettes. – They have left this stuff in the warehouse. - The laws have not permitted to smoke in public areas since last year. – She has rung for a taxi. – He has waited her for two hours. – It has grown five centimetres. – He has caught the butterflies with a net. - She has painted her house in blank. – They have lent me \$ 50 dollars. – We have taken that picture in the mall. - The report has informed nothing important about that. -

## **M. Forme oraciones con las siguientes palabras.**

not – the - I – have – yet. - read – newspaper

have – the - We – police. - rung - just

cold – had - He – a - this – week. - has

rained – since - has – It – April. - not

a – never – camel. - They - have – ridden

has – a – had - recently - not - She – job

yet.- not – He – eaten - has

plane – has - The – landed. – already

homework – not - finished – her - Mary - has – yet.

never – in - have – Japan. – You - been

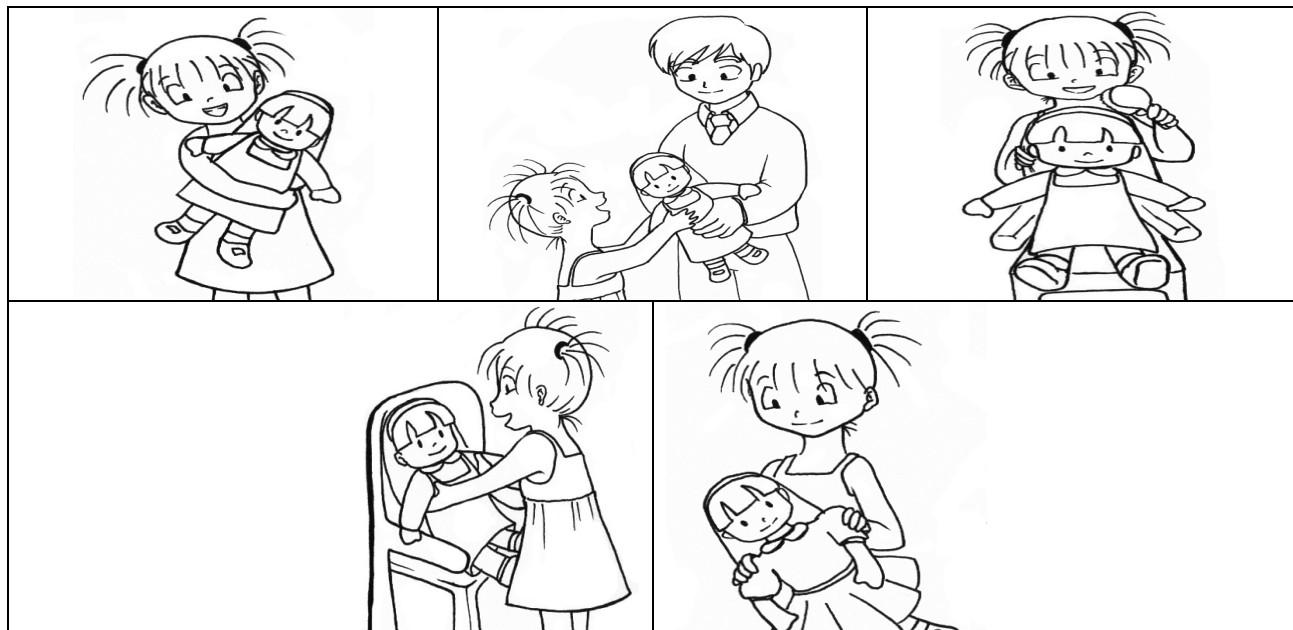
fallen – in - has – already - love. - He

red - has – a - never - passed – light. - Naomi

become – cloudy. – has - weather - The

was - since - a- I - met - have - I – him – child.  
not - begun - concert – has – yet. - The  
two - been - boy - years. - sick – for – has - That  
has – since – The – not – moved - turtle – 4 o'clock.  
umbrella - brought - new - She – her - has  
a – lately. - studied – He – lot - has  
up. - have – woken - already - kids - The

**What has she done for the last hour?**



**LESSON SEVEN**  
**Future with *going to***  
**Question tags**  
**Conjunctions**

**Futuro con *going to***

En inglés hay diferentes formas de expresar acciones en **Futuro**.

En algunos casos se pueden utilizar **Present Simple**, **Present Continuous**, **Future (*going to*)** y también **Future (*will*)**.

A) Como ya sabemos se usa **Present Simple** para referirse a eventos futuros que son parte de un calendario, horario o fecha establecida.

My husband **arrives** in Chile next week.

My plane **leaves** at 3 o'clock.

What time **does** the bus leave?

**Do** you have an English class on Thursday morning?

I **start** to work on 1<sup>st</sup> of August.

B) Dijimos que eventualmente se puede usar el **Present Continuous** para acciones futuras o eventos que están planeados con anticipación.

I **am travelling** to the North next summer.

We're **having** spaghetti for dinner.

I **am washing** my hair this evening.

C) El **Futuro con *going to*** es usado para hablar de nuestros planes o intenciones.

La diferencia entre **Present Continuous** y Futuro con ***going to*** es que con el primero se habla de planes establecidos con anticipación, mientras que con el segundo se alude a simples intenciones y decisiones.

Ejemplo:

I am dying my hair this afternoon. (Present Continuous = tener planes hechos para hacer algo)

I **am going to dye** my hair this afternoon. (**Future going to** = tener la simple intención de hacer algo)

**¿Cuándo se usa el Futuro con *going to*?**

1) Se usa el Futuro con ***going to*** para hablar de planes o intenciones.

Ejemplos:

We **are going to pay** for a new car.

They **are going to study** literature before grammar.

Pam **is going to call** them to tell the truth.

I **am going to stop** her wearing my clothes.

2) Cuando se desea expresar algunos eventos que ya han comenzado.

Ejemplos:

**It's going to rain.**

Look out! We are **going to fall** down.

My mom **is going to have** another baby in September.

I **am going to give** the final exam next month.

3) Para dar órdenes o rechazar ciertas acciones.

Ejemplos:

He **is going to take** his medicine whether he likes or not!

You **are not going to play** basketball in the park!

I **am not going to listen** to your problems again!

We **are not going to agree** with him.

*¿Cómo se forma el Futuro con going to?*

Este **Futuro** se forma con el **Present of verb to be + going + infinitivo**.

### FUTURE GOING TO

Present Simple del Verbo To be + going + infinitivo		
Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I am going to go.	I am not going to go.	Am I going to go?
You are going to go.	You are not going to go.	Are you going to go?
He is going to go.	He is not going to go.	Is he going to go?
She is going to go.	She is not going to go.	Is she going to go?
It is going to go.	It is going to go.	Is it going to go?
We are going to go.	We are going to go.	Are we going to go?
You are going to go.	You are going to go.	Are you going to go?
They are going to go.	They are going to go.	Are they going to go?

Examples:

I **am going to buy** the air ticket. I **am not going to call** him again. I'm **not going to do** that.

We **are going to meet** them. We **are not going to come** back. We're **not going to go** out.

She **is going to dance**. She **is not going to drive** alone. She's **not going to decide** yet.

**Is he going to take** his vacation soon?

Yes, he **is going to take** his vacation soon.

No, he **is not going to take** his vacation soon.

**Are they going to meet** us?

Yes, they **are going to meet** us.

No, they **are not going to meet** us.

**Is Mary going to travel?**

Yes, **she is**.

No, **she isn't**.

**Are the architects going to bring** the plans?

Yes, **they are**.

No, **they aren't**.

\*Es necesario señalar que en algunas ocasiones el **going to** se pronuncia como **gonna**, especialmente cuando es usado en diálogos informales.

Ejemplo:

Everybody **is going to drive** to the theatre this evening.

Everybody's **gonna drive** to the theatre this evening.

D) Por último, se usa el **Futuro** con **will** para hablar de hechos que ocurrirán con bastante certeza en el futuro y también de acciones que el hablante no puede modificar.

También se usa **will** para hacer promesas, amenazas, expresar decisiones espontáneas o indicar una buena predisposición para hacer algo.

### FUTURO CON WILL

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I will go. (I'll go)	I will not go. (I won't go)	Will I go?
You will go. (You'll go)	You will not go (You won't go)	Will you go?
He will go. (He'll go)	He will not go. (He won't go)	Will he go?
She will go. (She'll go)	She will not go. (She won't go)	Will she go?
It will go. (It'll go)	It will not go. (It won't go)	Will it go?
We will go. (We'll go)	We will not go. We won't go.	Will we go?
You will go. (You'll go)	You will not go. You won't go.	Will you go?
They will go. (They'll go)	They will not go. They won't go.	Will they go?

-Ejemplos de promesas:

When I **will see** you again? I **will come** before the weekend.

I'll **pay** you tomorrow.

-Ejemplos de amenazas:

I'll **kill** you!

We'll **destroy** the boat of the enemies!

-Ejemplos de decisiones espontáneas:

Both blouses are nice, but I'll **buy** the red one.

There is a bus at 6:00 p.m. and another one at 6:30 p.m. I'll **take** the first one.

-Ejemplos de buena predisposición:

The telephone is ringing. I'll **answer** it.

Who goes? I'll **go**.

## Exercises Futuro con going to

### A. Desarrolle las siguientes conjugaciones según corresponda:

I (read). - You (sleep). - He (arise). - It (eat). - They (bite). - He (break). - She (bring). - He (break). - Tony (build). - Anne and Michael (burn). - They (buy). - He (catch). - She (choose). - He (come). - The cars (cost). - They (cut). - Robert (do). - The children (draw). - Peter (drink). - Richard and Edwards (drive). - Pablo (fall). - They (find). - He (fly). - She (forbid). - I (forget). - They (forgive). - Oliver (get). - Julie and Frank (give). - He (buy). - Christine and Gina (grow). - I (dream). - They (arrive). - He (hide). - She (hit). - Holly (hold). - They (hurt). - He (keep). - They (know). - He (learn). - My mother (leave). - He (lend). - She (let). - I (lie). - They (light). - He (lose). - They (make). - It (mean). - He (meet). - She (make a mistake). - I (misunderstand). - They (pay). - He (put). - They (read). - You (ride). - I (ring). - It (rise). - Gisselle (run). - He (play). - She (say). - They (open). - He (sell). - Tina and John (send). - They (set). - I (show). - They (shut). - He (sing). - Teresa (sit). - Helen (sleep). - It (run). - You (speak). - He (spend). - I (steal). - They (swim). - It (take). - She (teach). - You (tear). - Tracy and Mark (tell). - Andrew (think). - He (throw). - I (trust). - The students (understand). - I (wake up). - You (wear). - Oliver (win). - I (write). - Jonathan (dance). - She (talk) - They (paint) - She (watch) - I (look).

### B. Reemplace al sujeto de la oración y conjúguelo de acuerdo a la información dada:

He is going to read. (**My friends**) - Mary's parents are going to travel. (**I**) - Children are going to enjoy the show. (**He**) - Teresa is going to enter to the room. (**My parents**) - The teachers are going to explain the task. (**She**) - Sarah is going to finish the report. (**The students**) - The boy is going to fix the bicycle. (**Anne and Teresa**) - She is going to help me. (**You**) - The boss is going to hire a new secretary. (**They**) - She is going to include the report. (**John and Mary**) - You are going to invite her to the party. (**Anne**) - He is going to listen to rock music. (**My cousins**) - They are going to live here. (**I**) - He is going to move the boxes. (**John and Frank**) - She is going to open the store. (**You**) - They are going to paint the house. (**Sharon**) - John is going to play soccer. (**The children**) - Rebecca is going to smoke outside. (**I**) - The class is going to start early. (**The lessons**) - The taxis are going to stop here. (**The bus**) - We are going to study biology (**Helen**) - My mother is going to talk to you. (**Your grandparents**) - Danielle is going to translate the documents. (**I**) - Bryan and Philip are going to travel. (**She**) - I am going to use the red pencil. (**You**) - My sister is going to visit my aunt. (**Johanna and Patrick**) - The nurse is going to wait for him. (**The teachers**) - My father is going to walk on the beach. (**Rafael and Karla**)

### C. Cambie las oraciones dadas a:

#### C1. Present Continuous y Future con going to.

My friends live in New York. - The elephants run fast. - The employers accept the conditions. - My father opens the window. - My aunts enjoy parties. - Children paint the wall. - Sharon and Frank play the guitar. - My cousins watch television in the living room. - I work here. - They complain about everything. - Christine arrives late. - Kids are drawing on class. - My father drinks red wine for lunch. - Computers help a lot in class.

## **C2. Present Continuous y Present Simple.**

The lady is going to have her hair cut. - He is going to do his job. - They are going to come to the office at 10 o'clock. – Tina is going to catch the ball. - The lesson is going to begin now. – I am going to consider that. – They are going to fight because of you. – Pam and Robert are going to fly directly their home. – Teresa is going to bring her dictionary. - She is going to drive your car. – The students are going to leave the school early. -

### **D. Constece las siguientes preguntas con affirmative short answers:**

Are people going to visit the new museum? - Is the attorney going to speak to the judge? - Are you going to sit here? – Is Peter going to ride the horse tomorrow? – Are Oliver and Daniela going to choose the blue car? – Are you going to drink beer tonight? – Are Helen and Frank going to learn English? – Is the class going to start at 9 o'clock? – Are you going to spend a lot of time here? – Is she going to leave soon? – Are your aunts and uncles going to build the house? - Is Natalie going to swim next week? - Is Derek going to come to the party? - Are you going to sing next weekend? – Is Tamara going to sell her car? – Is Carolina going to teach the present continuous? - Is Esther going to run in the race? – Is she going to get the scholarship? – Is the team going to lose the game? - Are they going to understand the lesson? - Is Paul going to fight in the way out? – Is Joseph going to take the course? – Are Macarena and Elisa going to eat hot dogs tomorrow? - Is Pauline going to send the letter next week? - Is she going to smell the roses later? – Are you going to put the vase on the table? - Is he going to feel cold this night? - Are Rose and Charles going to wear the same costume for the party? – Are you going to hide her shoes? – Is she going to make a cake? - Is Pablo going to pay his bill next month?

### **E. Constece las siguientes preguntas con negative short answers:**

Are you going to sleep in the forest? - Is the president going to sign the documents? – Are you going to order your room? - Is Camille going to open the door? – Are they going to touch the lion at the zoo? – Is he going to arrive on time? – Are you going to work here? - Are Tom and Jill going to ask for a new bed? – Are the children going to cross the street by themselves? - Is the secretary going to include all the papers? - Is she going to look the painting? – Are your parents going to accept this situation? – Are Mathias and Sebastian going to play soccer this weekend? – Are you going to decide what to do tonight? – Are the students going to answer the questions? – Is Helen going to sign the contract this month? - Are you going to live with your friend? – Is he going to wash the rug? – Are Julie and Tracy going to walk here alone? - Is Frank going to ask her what to do? – Is your mother going to cook dinner? – Is the boss going to lock the office? - Are you going to hire Patty? – Is the movie going to start at 10 o'clock? – Are they going to change the furniture? – Are they going to need help? – Is the taxi going to stop on the street? – Is the maid going to clean the kitchen? – Are you going to check out next weekend? – Is Julian going to visit his grandparents on Monday? – Is Deborah going to allow smoking at her house?

### **F. Constece las siguientes preguntas con affirmative full answers:**

Is the government going to provide enough help? - Are they going to know the truth some day? – Am I going to tell him what I feel? - Is Richard going to keep his phone number? – Is Frederic going to fly to Canada on Friday? – Are you going to give the present to Martin tonight? – Is Mary going to draw the building? – Is she going to have a party next weekend? – Is Clare going to meet her friends on Monday? – Is she going to cut

the paper later? – Are you going to see Julie on Tuesday? – Is Tony going to buy the camera? - Are you going to wake her up tomorrow morning? – Are Gabriel and Philip going to read the books for the test? – Are you going to sleep until mid-day tomorrow? – Is she going to bring the drinks for the party? – Is her father going to let her go to the party? – Is he going to start classes next semester? – Are you going to stay at her house next month? - Is Loreto going to finish the job before you? – Are you going to decide what to do? – Is Matthias going to play tennis? – Is the family going to travel to Disney World? - Are Lisa and George going to listen to pop music? - Is she going to try really hard? – Is Francisca going to change her shoes? – Are the teachers going to accept the proposal? – Is Maritza going to look the ocean? – Are we going to wait for the bus? – Are classes going to start at 8 o'clock?

#### **G. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con negative full answers:**

Are the students going to go back to classes? - Are you going to look for a new apartment? - Is he going to watch the movie here? – Is Peter going to lift the boxes? – Is the teacher going to call your parents? – Is she going to complain for the bad attention? – Are you going to paint their house? – Is Sandy going to talk to her sister? – Is the boy going to try to get in? – Are the accountants going to calculate the rate? – Are you going to close the window? – Is the mechanic going to fix the car? – Are Ralph and Alexandra going to reserve tickets for the weekend? – Are they going to organize the meeting? – Is he going to finish the project on time? – Is she going to smoke a cigarette? – Are the ladies going to study French? – Is he going to check in tonight? - Is Karla going to prepare dinner? – Are you going to move the boxes? – Is he going to enclose the pictures? – Are Hans and John going to stay at the University? – Are you going to wait for me? – Is he going to travel to Europe next summer? – Are you going to listen to the new song? – Are they going to understand all the explanations? – Is she going to lose her keys? – Is Elena going to think of you? – Are the children going to run in the afternoon? – Is the boy going to teach you how to do it? – Is the lady going to sell the perfumes? – Is Robert going to sing romantic songs?

#### **H. Consteste las siguientes Wh- questions:**

When are they going to learn good manners? - Why are you going to work in a hospital? - When is he going to arrive late? – What are we going to look for? – Which documents is the secretary going to enclose? – Who is not going to permit cats in the house? – Why are they going to study? – Where is the car going to stop? – What is my mother going to cook? – When is she going to wash her car? – Where are Mary and Peter going to live in Argentina? – When are they going to sign their divorce? – How is Peter going to calculate how many people are here? – What is John going to answer to the teacher? – When are you going to visit my grandmother? - Why is she going to want a hamster? – What time is Tamara going to close the restaurant? - How are Josephine and Frank going to fix the computers? – What time are they going to meet on Saturday? – Who is George going to hire as an electrician? – When are they going to finish the biology project? – Why is she going to smoke alone? – When are they going to ask for a drink? – What time are you going to call your best friend? – Where is Esther going to talk to her Math teacher? – Why is she going to cry every day? – What time is he going to open the store? – When is Mathew going to order her bedroom? – Why the lady is going to clean the table?

#### **I. Cambie las oraciones afirmativas a negativas:**

We are going to accept all the terms under these conditions. - Peter is going to lift the boxes. - They are going to watch the television. - Oliver and Frank are going to enjoy the party. - Tina is going to look for a new job. - They are going to permit smoking in here. – The baby is going to cry because he is hungry. - Mary is going to like this present. - Tony is going to visit his family in Washington. - They are going to

check out tomorrow morning. - The children are going to clean the mess. - It is going to stop next week. - We are going to need more money. - They are going to change the rules next month. - The meeting is going to start late. - The boss is going to hire a new junior. - Peter is going to lock the window. - My sister is going to cook pasta. – Henry and Daniel are going to ask the questions to the teacher. - John is going to walk on the beach. - Fabian is going to wash his hair tomorrow. - Julie is going to live in New York. - Shakira is going to sign an autograph for me. – Thomas is going to answer all the questions. - He is going to decide what to do next week. – The children are going to play hide and seek. - They are going to accept the demands. – Charly is going to include everything you need. - The cow is going to cross the bridge. - Helen is going to ask for a better room. - You are going to work more.

### ***J. Cambie las oraciones negativas a afirmativas:***

Vegetables are not going to disappear in a few years. – Patrick is not going to arrive at 8 o'clock. - Ralph is not going to open the bottle. - I am not going to buy a better computer. – They are not going to pay on cash. - I am not going to eat sea food tomorrow night. – They are not going to read Harry Potter. The guy is not going to give back the wallet. - They are not going to sit together. – He is not going to ride a big horse. – She is not going to choose the red cell phone. - They are not going to drink red wine. – He is not going to meet her on the park. – I am not going to have a new car. – James is not going to drive my car. - Helen is not going to give me the money. - Jonas is not going to fly next month. – He is not going to tell you the reasons. - Charlie is not going to pay the bill. – Oliver is not going to show us her new MP4. – The boy is not going to hide the toy. – She is not going to wear her new dress. – He is not going to sleep on the sofa. – They are not going to read the magazine. – It is not going to cost more. - Teresa is not going to wake early. - Ralph is not going to listen to romantic music. - Karla is not going to wait for her friends outside. – Richard is not going to travel abroad. – Paul and Frederic are not going to stay at the hotel. - The family is not going to move the furniture. - Jane is not going to prepare breakfast.

### ***K. Transforme las siguientes oraciones en preguntas:***

Tom, Jo and Rosemary are going to assist to certain healthy programs. - I am going to learn German. – The class is going to begin early. – He is going to spend the money here. – She is going to leave soon. – They are going to forget the dates. – Two men are going to build the fence. – John and Karla are going to swim to the beach. – He is going to come to my home. – Giselle is going to sing tonight. – I am going to sell my clothes. – The teacher is going to teach French. – The boys are going to throw the ball. – The doctors are going to find the problem. – The two boys are going to run in the park. – They are going to lose the cards. – The students are going to understand the explanation. - He is going to put the plate on the kitchen. - It is going to smell badly. – Mary is going to send the package tomorrow. – We are going to eat salad. – He is going to take the pictures. – The dogs are going to fight. – Tom is going to write the paper. – My father is going to break the window. – Teresa is going to bring her boyfriend. – They are going to do the homework. – She is going to fall from the roof. – Sarah is going to hear the noise. – They are going to speak to the teacher. - The boys are going to burn the letters. – The boy is going to hurt the cat. – I am going to ring Stepanie. - My father is going to let me go out until 8 o'clock.

### ***L. Transforme las siguientes oraciones a preguntas utilizando el Question Word adecuado:***

The official information is going to appear next week. - Teresa is going to check in the big hotel. - We are going to study for the test. – Henry is going to book two seats for the meeting. - Charlie is going to smoke ten cigarettes. - Gary is going to finish the test. - My parents are going to reserve Ritz Hotel for tomorrow. - Tony is going to fix his bicycle. - Angela is going to close the door. - John is going to calculate the taxes. –

He is going to try to be here on time. - She is going to talk to Sarah. - They are going to pass through the park. - They are going to complain because of the bad weather. - He is going to call my sister. - Peter is going to lift the boxes. - They are going to watch the television. - Oliver and Frank are going to enjoy the party. - Tina is going to look for a new job. - They are going to permit smoking in here. - The baby is going to cry because he is hungry. - Mary is going to like her present. - Tony is going to visit his family in Washington. - They are going to check out tomorrow morning. - The children are going to sweep the flour. - It is going to stop raining next week. - We are going to need more money. - They are going to change the rules next month. - The meeting is going to start late. - Peter is going to lock the window. - My sister is going to cook pasta. - Henry and Daniel are going to ask the questions to the teacher.

**M. Forme una oración con las siguientes palabras:**

lodge. - in - We - going to - are - sleep -the  
the - Teresa - big - is - going to - hotel. - check in - at  
are - for - study - We - going to -test. - the  
is - book - place - Henry - going to - meeting. - a - for - the  
going to - Charlie - less. - is - smoke  
finish - business - the - Gary - test. - going to - is  
bicycle. - Tony - going to - is - fix - his  
close -Angela - the - is - going to - door.  
John - going to - taxes. - calculate - is - the  
going to - He - be - on - try - to- here - time. - is  
going to- She - is - talk - Sarah. - to  
the - are - They - pass - along - street. - going to  
the - of - complain - They - are - weather. - going to - because - bad  
call - He - going to - sister. - his - is  
a - party. - cake - the - bring - are - going to - They - for  
best - choose - the - are - prices. - We - going to  
an - write - extense - going to - am - I - essay.  
the - bath - in - going to - a - are - take - You - jacuzzi.  
some - cut - going to - He - is - flowers.

## *¿Qué son las ‘question tags’?*

Para cerciorarnos de que comprendimos algo cuando estamos hablando con alguien o para asegurarnos que esa persona está de acuerdo con nosotros se usan las **question tags**.

Es una pregunta corta que se añade al final de una frase.

Si la oración a la cual acompaña es afirmativa la **question tag** se formula en negación, mientras que si la oración era negativa la **question tag** adopta una forma positiva conjugada según la persona y el tiempo verbal ocupado.

1) Cuando el hablante espera una respuesta afirmativa la **question tag** se construye en la forma negativa.

Ejemplos:

It's boring, **isn't it?**

Yes, it's boring.

They are tired, **aren't they?**

Yes, they are tired.

It was easy, **wasn't it?**

Yes, it was easy.

You were exhausted, **weren't you?**

Yes, we were exhausted.

We smell good, **don't we?**

Yes, you smell good.

2) Si el hablante espera una respuesta negativa la **question tag** es afirmativa.

Ejemplos:

The air is not polluted, **is it?**

No, the air not is polluted.

It is snowing, **is it?**

No, it isn't snowing.

They have not many children, **have they?**

No, they have not many children.

The plane doesn't arrive on time, **does it?**

No, the plane doesn't arrive on time.

She didn't go to the theatre, **did she?**

No, she didn't go to the theatre.

## *¿Cuáles son las conjunciones?*

Las conjunciones son ciertas palabras como **and** (y), **but** (pero) y **or** (o) que sirven para unir dos oraciones.

Ejemplos:

Kate is reading a magazine. Paul is dancing.

Kate is reading a magazine **and** Paul is dancing.

I talk loud. Sarah talks in a low voice.

I talk loud **but** Sarah talks in a low voice.

Do you like this book **or** that one?

It is going to rain **or** it's going to snow?

## LESSON EIGHT

Past Perfect  
Modals Verbs  
Phrasal Verbs  
Pasive Voice  
Indirect Speech  
Conditionals

### Past Perfect

#### ¿Cuándo se usa Past Perfect?

- 1) Se usa **Past Perfect** para referirse a acciones que ocurrieron con anterioridad a otras acciones o tiempos pasados.

Ejemplos:

I **had had** breakfast when he knocked the door.

As soon as my dad **had left**, we decided to go out with my friends.

After he **had finished** his work, he watched TV.

She **had spent** all her budget by Saturday.

Hay que tener en cuenta que siempre la primera acción que tuvo lugar se expresa en **Past Perfect** mientras que la segunda se dice en **Past Simple**.

Aunque es necesario aclarar que la acción expresada en **Past Perfect** también puede ser escrita en la segunda parte de la oración sin que el significado de ésta sufra variación alguna:

Ejemplos:

By the time the telephone rang, I **had left** home.

The baby woke up, soon after he **had listened** to the doorbell.

When my parents arrived, the thieves **had gone**.

At 12 o'clock they still **hadn't come**.

- 2) Se usa **Past Perfect** después de algunos verbos en pasado como *think*, *tell* y *wonder* para referirse a acciones que habían sucedido con anterioridad al momento en que se expresó el hablante.

Ejemplos:

We *told* her that we **had finished** the homework.

I *wondered* who **had left** the door open.

He *thought* that he **had sent** some money the week before.

- 3) Además, se usa **Past Perfect** para indicar cuánto tiempo se ha prolongado una acción en el pasado desde su inicio hasta el momento que el hablante lo comenta. (*How long...?*)

Ejemplos:

Patty told me that her mom **had been** ill since January. (How long **had** her mom **been** ill?)

When they got married, they **had known** each other for 3 years. (How long **had** they **known** each other?)

4) Se puede usar ***Past Perfect*** también para expresar situaciones o eventos que no ocurrieron.  
Ejemplos:

I wish you **had told** me the truth.

We prefer they **had asked** us before.

She **had intended** to make a cake, but she couldn't because it was too late.

\* Nota: más adelante cuando se vea el uso de los condicionales se verá con mayor profundidad este uso específico del ***Past Perfect***.

5) El ***Past Perfect*** también es utilizado después de expresiones como *it was the first/second...time that...*  
Ejemplos:

*It was the first time that I had watched* that movie.

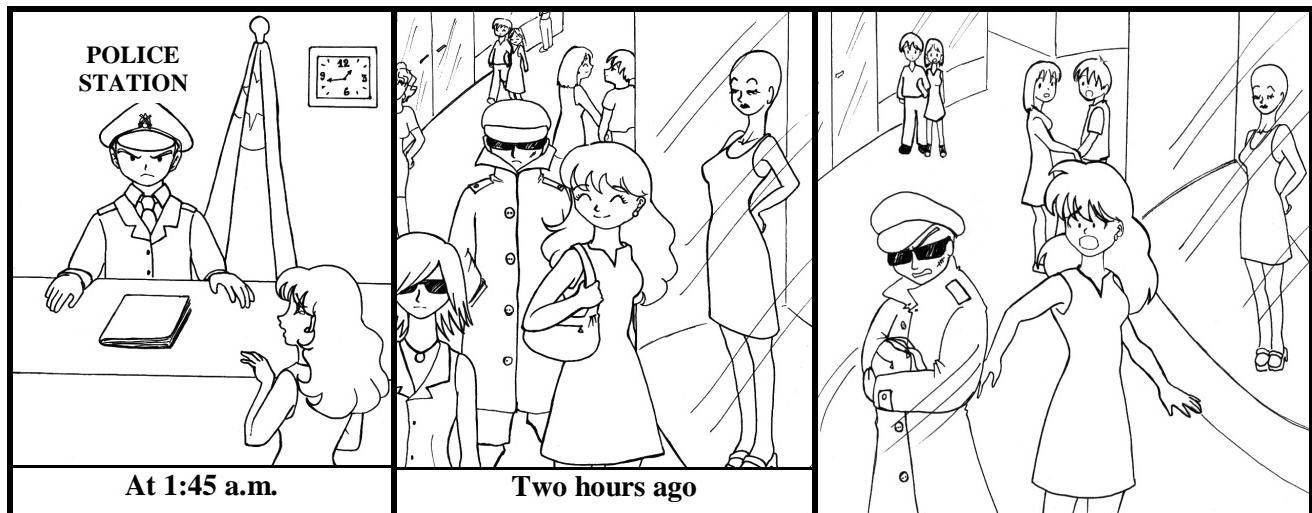
*It was the second concert that I had been* in my life.

*It was the fourth time that she had repeated* me the same thing.

6) Cuando se desea expresar el orden de los eventos ocurridos en el pasado se debe usar ***Past Simple*** con expresiones tales como: *first, then, next, etc*, mientras que si lo que se busca es expresar una acción anterior a otra ocurrida en el pasado se debe usar el ***Past Perfect*** con expresiones como: *already, up to then, before that day, after, etc*.

Ejemplo:

Jully got up at seven. She opened her birthday gifts and then she went out with her friends. (***Past Simple***)  
Before her birthday, Jully **had** never **gone** out with her friends. (***Past Perfect***)



**A robber had stolen her bag two hours before she came to the police station.**

*¿Cómo se forma el Past Perfect?*

El **Past Perfect** se forma con **had + past participle**.

### PAST PERFECT: PAST HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I had gone.	I had not gone. (I hadn't gone)	Had I gone?
You had gone.	You had not gone. (You hadn't gone)	Had you gone?
He had gone.	He had not gone. (He hadn't gone)	Had he gone?
She had gone.	She had not gone. (She hadn't gone)	Had she gone?
It had gone.	It had not gone. (It hadn't gone)	Had it gone?
We had gone.	We had not gone. (We hadn't gone)	Had we gone?
You had gone.	You had not gone. (You hadn't gone)	Had you gone?
They had gone.	They had not gone. (They hadn't gone)	Had they gone?

Ejemplos:

**He had come** when I visited him.

**We had eaten** when she came.

**I had already spent** my money.

**It had not rained** for weeks.

**She had not done** anything.

The robber **had not come** yet.

**He hadn't arrived** by Monday.

They **hadn't asked** him yet.

The plane **hadn't landed**.

**Had he invited** her?

Yes, he **had invited** her.

No, he **had invited** her.

**Had you forgotten** that situation?

Yes, I **had**.

No, I **hadn't**.



**She hadn't realized that there was a woman behind her.**

## Exercises Past Perfect

### **A. Desarrolle las siguientes conjugaciones según corresponda.**

She (accept). - You (accuse). - She (achieve). - I (acquire). - They (act). - You (add). - He (admit). - Jesse (get). - John and Patrick (allow). - The housekeeper (maintain). - They (marry). - I (move). - Tina (name). - She and I (notice). - Tamara and Tim (offer). - Helen (open). - The children (order). - I (organize). - You (paint). - The bus (pass). - He (permit). - They (remember). - I (remind). - The men (remove). - You (rent). - I (repair). - The teacher (repeat). - He (believe). - It (belong). - She (awake). - I (save). - It (seem). - I (play). - They (prefer). - Natalia (prepare). - You (present). - Anne and Frank (feed). - She (feel). - You (annoy). - Students (become). - I (catch). - You (apologize). - She (call). - He (carry). - Paula (go). - They (have). - I (hear). - It (change). - You (check). - You (visit). - The cat (try). - You (turn). - He (wait). - I (hide). - Sarah and Ralf (hit). - The dog (bite). - They (break). - I (walk). - You (want). - Tim (wash). - She (use). - My mother (worry). - The teacher (approach). - I (approve). - He (set). - You (attack). - They (arrange). - You (arrive). - Karla (draw). - Peter (drink). - You (ring). - I (come). - She (compare). - They (complain). - He (reach). - I (wish). - My father (work). - You (forget). - It (appear). - I (find). - You (do). - She (consider). - It (consist). - They (fight). - It (fly).

### **B. Reemplace al sujeto de la oración y conjúguelo de acuerdo a la información dada.**

They had asked all the questions before the supervisor arrived. (**I**) - My brother had run the race when my mother saw him. (**Ralf and Patrick**) - You had seen her twice before she left the country. (**My friend**) - She had found the ring before the police came. (**Tamara and Tom**) - My mother cooked the meat as soon as she had heard the news. (**My grandparents**) - Christian and Charlie had bought the drinks for the party when we asked them in the supermarket. (**I**) - They had built the house before winter started. (**He**) - Ralf had driven cars many times before the accident happened. (**They**) - Her boyfriend had hurt her many times since we knew her. (**I**) - I wish Tina had left the jewels in the safety deposit box. (**You**) - It was the first time the tourists had booked a table in that restaurant. (**I**) - I told her that the new car cost more money than we had expected. (**They**) - I wonder who had cut my letter. (**You**) - I had watched that TV show a million times before it appeared in this country. (**Teresa**) - The movie had begun two minutes before she arrived. (**The classes**) - The factory had produced everything they needed. (**It**) - She had pulled the door but he couldn't open it. (**Thomas**) - I had forgotten the times their parents punished them for the same reason. (**Helen**) - They had offered her all their help, but she didn't accept it. (**You**) - It was the second time the family had received a notification like that. (**She**) - When we arrived the secretary had signed all the papers. (**Tim and Joseph**) - As soon as Julie had finished her test she smoked a cigarette. (**They**) - The teacher had said what we had to do. (**I**).

### **C. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative y negative short answers.**

Had you torn the piece of paper when we left you? - Had Peter employed a new secretary before they came? - Had she enclosed the documents I needed? - Had you encouraged your mother to tell you the truth when you visited her? - Had my friends thought about the consequences of their acts before they did them? - Had the children entered to the room when you got inside? - Had Tina washed the glass of water before she filled it up? - Had they stolen some money in other places before the police found them? - Had the girls destroyed some pictures in your house when they were alone? - Had Ralf arrived to the stadium before the football game started? - Had Frank delivered all the packages when you asked him about it? - Had the teacher taught that tense before she took the test? - Had he decided what he wanted to do for his birthday? - Had Thomas already declared in front of the jury when the witness arrived? - Had Sarah developed that technique before

you mentioned it to her? – Had the child finished the homework when his mother was there? – Had the lessons ended when I left? – Had Helen cut the flowers before the ceremony started? – Had Tony and Marianne danced together in the past before he met my sister? – Had the students answered the sentences before the test was over? – Had you corrected the report before she read it? – Had Gina worn that dress in other parties before her graduation? – Had the boy won the prize before the end of that year? – Had they swum in my swimming pool before the water was changed? - Had you spent time with your children when they were at school? - Had Tina dropped the boxes by the time the telephone rang? – Had the hairdresser dried your hair previously he cut it? – Had they elected a republican president before they voted a democratic one?

#### **D. Consteste las siguientes preguntas con affirmative y negative full answers.**

Had the principal accepted all the conditions before you talked to him? – Had you achieved your goals before the year 1996 ended? – Had she acted weird by the time you met her? – Had your mother added sugar to my coffee before I drank it? – Had Jennifer admitted her mistakes when you asked her? - Had your brothers fought with you when you were a child? – Had the teacher mentioned what you had to do? – Had you moved the boxes when they came? – Had they found the missing ring when she offered the reward? – Had you done the mess before your dad came home? – Had you considered your mother wishes before that day? – Had you flown to Africa before you travelled to South Africa? - Had they asked all the questions to the policeman before they were here? – Had he won a race before he ran? – Had they avoided this conversation up to then? – Had you helped sick people by the time you worked at the hospital? – Had Karen driven this car before she crashed it? – Had you imagined this life before we lived here? – Had the cooker cut the meat before he grilled it? – Had you loved a good man before you met Peter? – Had your boyfriend hurt you when you were together? – Had the boss hired non experience people before he took this secretary? – Had you watched this T.V show before I recommended you? – Had your parents bought all the ingredients when they decided to prepare the meal at home? – Had the girl bathed the baby when she looked after him? – Had you blamed me for the happening in the meeting? – Had Frederic brought his friends home when he knew about the partie? – Had you kept my books in your locker before you returned them to me? – Had the tourists previously booked in this expensive restaurant? – Had the cell phone cost more money than we expected? – Had the party begun before we arrived? – Had you noticed he was laughing at me when I was there? – Had Tina opened the store before her parents arrived? – Had James and Frank organized a meal before my birthday party?

#### **F. Consteste las siguientes Wh- questions.**

Where had the shoes appeared when you found them? – What had you happened before you came back? - Where had you gone before you travel to Brazil? – Why had the boss hired her as secretary before he talked us? – When had the couple argued the last time before they broke up? – Where had they flown before they travelled to France? – What had the nurse taken when you got in? - How long had the children run before they stopped? – What had my father bought for dinner before he cooked? – Who had taken a bath before we left home? – Why had the students blamed the teacher for their mistakes before they knew the grades? – What had Peter bought before he arrived to the party? – Who had built the yellow house before they demolished it? – Where had Frank driven your father's car before you drove it? – How many times had your ex hurt you before you ended the relationship? – When had Karla worn your T-shirt for the last time before she gave it back to you? – Where had Oliver arrived by the time I called him? - Why had the boys drawn on the wall before we painted it? – How much alcohol had the girl drunk before she felt ill? – What time had my friends come before we left? – What had you complained about when we met you at the shoe store? – How long had you worked in that office before to quit? – What restaurant had my husband booked a table before we celebrated our wedding anniversary? – How much had that beautiful house cost two years before you bought it? - How long had he watched T.V before I arrived? – What time had the class started before we

came in? – What had the principal proposed to solve this problem before he changed his mind? – How much money had you already received from the government before it gave you money again? - What had Gina done before she signed the contract? – What had they said about us before we got married? – What time had the movie started when we got there? - How long had her sister been ill before she definitely recovered?

### **G. Responda usando Past Perfect.**

Did your mother return yesterday? – Did the policeman find the child? – Did you play soccer? – Did your father earn that amount of money? – Did she do the homework alone? – Did you consider his proposal? – Did Tom fight with Sebastian? – Did she fly by herself to New York? – Did you tell your boyfriend the truth? – Did she win the race? – Did you try to contact me the previous days? – Did Daniela buy the bread I ate? – Did Christine bathe the dog? – Did Frank bring a cake for Tina's birthday? – Did you drive a motorbike? – Did she hurt you in the past? - Did your friend find your jacket? – Did your family book a table in that great restaurant? – Did your car cost a lot of money? - Did the cook prepare lunch? – Did your father get the prize? – Did you feel happy in that party? – Did you forgive Teresa? – Did Britney arrive on time? - Did the cat catch a mouse? – Did Frank apologize to you? – Did his girlfriend call him? – Did they travel to Australia? - Did you wear these shoes? – Did your wife hear our conversation? – Did Christine change her bad attitude? – Did Tom visit his parents? – Did you decide to be an engineer? – Did Gina wait for us many hours? – Did the children break the window with a stone? – Did Oliver walk from his house to college? - Did Tom take a nap? – Did her friend wake me up? – Did we have a holiday in June? – Did I get a credit card? – Did they meet your mother at the supermarket? – Did he eat some vegetables? – Did the meeting start just on time? – Did I speak to you after school? – Did she cook a cake by herself? – Did you see the movie at the cinema last year? – Did I get a scholarship last month? – Did we paint the house? – Did the lesson begin? – Did she leave the university in 1995? – Did you become a teacher last year? – Did the child take a bath by himself? – Did people work correctly? – Did I thank you at that time?

### **H. Escriba los verbos entre paréntesis en Past Simple y Past Perfect según corresponda.**

The sales (increase) before you (work) here? - She (invent) an answer before I (ask) her? – You (not prepare) your dinner when you (live) with your mother? – Jennifer and her husband (tell) you all when you (know) that? - Patrick (finish) his job before we (go out)? – I (discover) the truth before you (tell) me? – The students (understand) the explanation before I (teach) them? – The dog (cross) the street alone after you (come) here? – Your father (fish) in this river before we (go) there? – Christine (follow) the handsome guy before she met him? – Thomas (pay) the bill when I (ask) the waitress? - Bill (rent) a new apartment when I (ask) him? – The kid (improve) his English when they (finish) the classes? – John (join) to this group before we (invite) them? – You (find) the answer before we (read) the book? – She (meet) Robert before I (introduce) him? – They (jump) without protection before we (warn) them? – Your father (take care) our dog before we (ask) him? – The housekeeper (clean) the house when I (arrive) home? – You (consider) these results before I (tell) you? – They (exchange) the credit card when we (offer) a new one? - The teacher (explain) the subject when the class (end)? - The children (share) the toys before they (fight)? – You (laugh) at me before I (mention) it? – Tim (paint) his house when he (decide) to sell it? – You (buy) the food for the meeting when I (bring) some snacks? – Your brother (look) at me several times when I (see) him coming round me? – Your family (live) in this town before we (change)? – The lesson (begin) before I (be) here? – She (come) home before she (stay) in my house? – Jim (run) without right shoes before he (buy) some for running? – After I (finish) my job they (arrive) home. – Your friend (work) for the same firm for many years when he (retire). – The plane already (take off) before I (arrive) to the airport.

## **I. Cambie las oraciones afirmativas a negativas.**

You had studied many languages before you came to Chile. - We had misjudged people in that occasion. - They had suffered this same situation some years ago. - The cat had fallen from the second floor before she found it. - My father had previously suggested this solution. - Irene had read this book many times before I recommended her. - You friends had predicted this before it happened. - The boy had ridden his bicycle on this street before. - The children had prepared a surprise party before their mother's birthday. - I had been in this place many times before I went last summer. - My grandfather had already talked to my teacher once. - Your grandmother had sent you a big present before your birthday. - Charles had tasted the food which my mother prepared before we did. - The girl had already chosen the correct alternative before you said it at loud. - The mechanic had fixed the car when we left. - My sister had sold all the T-shirts before noon. - The engineer had tested the machine before we told him. - Tim and Frank had left my apartment before I woke up. - The boy had thanked the teacher for her help before we took the test. - The cook had prepared this dish many times before we ordered it. - The teacher had translated the paper before I asked for it. - Joseph had lost his wallet when he left the place. - You had gone to parties before he became sixteen. - I had traveled abroad before you came here. - The students had answered all the difficult questions before they started with the easy ones. - After my parents had forbidden me to visit you, they allowed it. - The housekeeper had cleaned the bathroom when I went in. - Elena had closed the window before Paul opened it. - She learnt everything I had taught her. - You had called me before we met. - When I offered to pay the bill they had already paid it. - I had hung the curtains before he came in.

## **J. Cambie las oraciones negativas a afirmativas.**

I hadn't told him the truth before we met. - My father hadn't cried before he saw me on my wedding dress. - The secretary hadn't written the document when I requested it. - The children hadn't crossed the bridge by themselves before they did it that day. - You hadn't finished the project when I called you. - My uncle hadn't fished before he went on that lake. - The mechanic hadn't fixed my sport car when I told him. - Richard hadn't torn the letter yet when I saw him. - The boss hadn't hired Peter before we arrived. - She hadn't enclosed the picture when I left. - Tom and Gina hadn't ended their relationship yet when John saw them a week ago. - You hadn't enjoyed your life before last night. - They hadn't entered my house before that day. - I hadn't taught that tense before you asked me to do it. - He hadn't stolen the money before the police caught him. - She hadn't thrown the ball before the game was over. - I hadn't taken the pictures when Pamela got here. - My sister hadn't cut the cake before we arrived. - Your boyfriend hadn't kissed you before your date. - The boy hadn't prepared the pizza he delivered it. - She hadn't broken the glass before they argued. - The teacher hadn't taught everything before the test. - Sebastian hadn't decided what to do when I talked to him. - You hadn't declared in the trial before the judge called you. - She hadn't developed the project when I asked her. - The course hadn't finished when they left the room. - My mother hadn't danced with my father before the wedding day. - My classmate hadn't copied the sentences from when the teacher erased the blackboard. - The director hadn't corrected the policies before he disclosed them. - Frederic hadn't hold Miriam's hand before they had a date in the park.

## **K. Transforme las siguientes oraciones en preguntas.**

Your mother had justified your actions before you did it. - The cat had killed my hamster when I checked the cage. - Tamara and Frank had knocked the door before I went to sleep. - The children had laughed at him many times before they met him. - The girl had watched that movie in before I invited her see it. - My family had lived in that same house some years ago. - Her boyfriend had loved another woman before she met him. - The boys had exchanged their games when we talked to them. - The teacher had explained the lessons many times before she repeated them again. - The students had expressed their demands before the teacher did. - It

had happened before we got here. - The boss had dismissed the new secretary before he told us. - My mother had imagined this bad situation before it happened. - The couple had gone to Brazil twice before they travelled there again. - My sister had had many friends before she lost her money. – Christian had heard the conversation before Martin told him everything. - My father had changed the lock when I found my keys. - The doctor had visited my grandmother before she got worse. - The little boy had tried to do it before that day. - Patrick and John had turned the lights off when Mary arrived. - Your friends had waited for three hours before you came home. - The kids had hidden my keys many times before I caught them. - Jasmine had scored the goal before this team. - That big dog had bitten Peter second times before it bit me. – Gabriele and Christine had broken the window when the police arrived. – Tamara had walked home alone many times before.

### **L. Transforme las siguientes oraciones a preguntas utilizando el Question Word adecuado.**

My friends and I had drunk at my house before we went to the pub. – My grandparents had come to my house five times before I invited them over last week. – As soon as the teacher had corrected our tests we checked the results. - Mister Richardson had already argued with the lady from the shoe store before he paid his shoes. - George had reached all his goals before he came here. - I had worked in that same office for five years in the past. - Gina had forgotten my boyfriend's previous birthday, but remembered it this time. - The teacher had already been there one hour the class started. - Christine had found her car keys under the table before we offered my help. - The doctor had tried to save her life before she died. – After we had offended her she started to cry. - The proposal had consisted on changing the methodologies, but finally we left them the way they were. – It wasn't the first time the animals escaped; they had escaped from the zoo tree times before. - The airplane had flown without any problems before it collapsed. - The students had asked these same questions last class. - Tina had kept quiet at her parents' home to avoid that conversation. - Giselle had already bought for cooking when her mother requested her. - The woman had bathed her sister baby before we arrived. - The man had already chosen the red car before we offered him any car. - Molly had blamed me many times for her own mistakes in the past. - Mathew had brought the necessary materials and we didn't know that. - The constructor had built the structure wrong before he noticed it. - Teresa had driven her car too fast before she crashed. - The boy had previously hurt the little cat one. – After I had kept all my high school books for many years, I decided to throw them away.

### **M. Una las siguientes oraciones usando Past Simple y Past Perfect :**

- 1) We (had) watched that movie last week. We discussed the movie.  
.....

- 2) My mother (had) made a cake two days ago. I ate a piece of that cake.  
.....

- 3) My family (had) lived in California for five years. My family moved here last month.  
.....

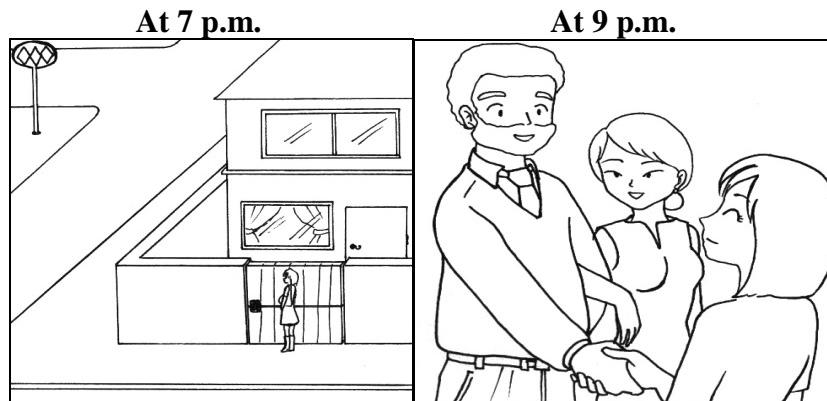
- 4) I (had) taken\took that beautiful picture last summer. We talked about the picture.  
.....

- 5) We (had) done\did the homework from last week. The teacher corrected the homework.  
.....

- 6) I (had) studied for the grammar test. I took it.  
.....

- 7) The cat (had) gotten\got the floor dirty with its feet. I cleaned the floor.  
.....

- 8) My cousin (had) recommended an interesting book.  
.....
- 9) She (had) gone\went to Belgium five years ago. She travelled around Europe.  
.....
- 10) June (had\did) not tell\told me anything. We met at the restaurant.  
.....
- 11) The child (had) broken\broke the window with his ball. I replaced the broken window with a new one.  
.....
- 12) I (had) crashed my car last Saturday. A mechanic fixed my car.  
.....
- 13) The weatherman (had\did) not say\said it would rain. It rained.  
.....
- 14) He (had) left all his stuff at my house. I tidied up the room.  
.....
- 15) I (had) planted some plants. I pruned the trees three months ago.  
.....



**She had come back home before they arrived.**

### Cuadro de verbos modales

Verbo	Sentido	Ejemplos
<b>can</b>	1. Habilidades 2. Peticiones	I can play the guitar. Can I use your phone?
<b>could</b>	1. Peticiones 2. Sugerencias 3. Posibilidad	Could I use your phone? You could buy her some flowers. There could be some rain tomorrow.
<b>may</b>	1. Peticiones 2. Posibilidad	May I use your phone? It may be your brother.
<b>might</b>	1. Peticiones 2. Posibilidad	Might I disturb you for a moment? There might be some snow tomorrow.
<b>must</b>	1. Obligación	You must stop smoking.
<b>shall</b>	1. Sugerencias 2. Ofrecimientos	Shall we go to the cinema? Shall I carry your case?
<b>should</b>	1. Consejos	You should stop smoking.
<b>will</b>	1. Hechos futuros 2. Decisiones	When will you be 21? £50? That's fine. I'll take it.
<b>would</b>	1. Condiciones 2. Ofrecimientos 3. Preferencias	If I were you, I'd go by tube. Would you like tea or coffee? I'd prefer tea. I'd recommend the Grand Hotel. I'd rather you didn't.

### ¿Qué son los phrasal verbs?

Los **phrasal verbs** son expresiones idiomáticas que se forman combinando verbos con preposiciones y adverbios. Esto da como resultado verbos compuestos con un significado muy distinto al que usualmente tienen los verbos individuales.

Por ejemplo, el verbo **give** significa **dar**, pero si se le agrega el complemento **up** obtenemos **give up** que significa: rendirse, abandonar, darse por vencido, claudicar, etc.

Un mismo **phrasal verb** puede tener varios significados y como la estructura gramatical es muy flexible, siempre se están creando nuevas expresiones.

## ¿Cómo se forman los phrasal verbs?

Un **phrasal verb** consiste de un verbo junto con una preposición o adverbio que modifica el sentido del mismo. A esta preposición o adverbio también se le suele llamar complemento. (*on, off, in, out, up, down, away, etc.*)

### VERBO + PREPOSICIÓN + OBJETO DIRECTO

Verbo transitivo (que lleva objeto directo)

- a) La preposición va entre en verbo y el complemento directo.  
**Looking at** him you don't know if he is a thief.

### VERBO + PARTÍCULA ADVERBIAL + OBJETO DIRECTO

Verbo transitivo (que lleva objeto directo)

- b) Si el complemento es un sustantivo, la partícula adverbial puede ir detrás del verbo o detrás del complemento.

She **looked up** the map – She **looked** the map **up**.

**Look** (something) **up**: consultar algo en un libro.

- c) Si el complemento es un pronombre, la partícula irá siempre detrás.

We want to get him a present to **cheer** him **up**.

**Cheer** (somebody) **up**: animar a alguien.

### VERBO + PARTÍCULA ADVERBIAL + PREPOSICIÓN + OBJETO DIRECTO

Verbo transitivo (que lleva objeto directo)

- d) Lleva dos partículas: la primera funciona como adverbio y la segunda como preposición.

It **ran away from** its master.

Mom **came in for** lunch.

En estos casos no se admite la colocación de un componente entre las partículas.

### VERBO + PARTÍCULA ADVERBIAL

Verbo intransitivo (que no lleva complemento directo)

En estos la partícula se pone inmediatamente después del verbo.

The car has **broken down**.

Ejemplos:

The plane **took off** this morning at 9 a.m. (El avión despegó esta mañana a las 9 hs.)

He **comes back** this afternoon. (Él regresa esta tarde)

I didn't **go out** yesterday. (Yo no salí ayer)

She **agrees with** you in several points. (Ella está de acuerdo contigo en varios puntos)

### Listado de phrasal verbs más comunes:

**agree with**: estar de acuerdo

**be about to**: estar a punto de.

**be back**: regresar.

**be out of**: quedarse sin.

**be over**: terminarse.

**Burn up**: quemarse y desaparecer.

**Break down**: dejar de funcionar o averiarse.

**call back**: volver a llamar.

**Call off**: cancelar.

**go away**: irse, marcharse.

**go back**: volver, regresar.

**go out**: salir (por la calle)

**hang on/hold on**: esperar.

**hang up**: colgar (el teléfono)

**knock down**: derribar, atropellar, demoler.

**look after**: cuidar.

**look for**: buscar.

**look forward to**: esperar con expectativa.

**Call up:** llamar por teléfono  
**carry on:** seguir, continuar.  
**carry out:** llevar a cabo.  
**clear up:** poner en orden.  
**come across:** encontrar, dar con.  
**Come back:** regresar.  
**come in:** entrar.  
**Come over:** visitar.  
**Come to:** recobrar el sentido.  
**Come up:** surgir de pronto (idea o tema de discusión)  
**cut off:** cortar, desconectar.  
**espectiv:** llevarse bien con algo o con alguien.  
**Get away:** conseguir marcharse.  
**get back:** volver, regresar.  
**get in (to):** entrar.  
**get off :** bajar (de un autobús, tren)  
**get on:** subir (a un autobús, moto)  
**get up:** levantarse.  
**Give back:** devolver.  
**give up:** dejar (de fumar, beber)

**Look into:** investigar.  
**Look like:** parecerse.  
**Look out for:** tener cuidado.  
**Look over:** leer cuidadosamente.  
**look up:** buscar algo (en un libro, diccionario)  
**move out:** salirse de la casa.  
**Move over:** poner a un lado.  
**Put in:** poner, espective.  
**put on:** encender, ponerse.  
**espective:** encontrar accidentalmente.  
**espective:** ir de un lugar a otro.  
**Run away:** escaparse, darse a la fuga.  
**Run into:** toparse con alguien.  
**run out of:** quedarse sin algo.  
**Take espe:** parecerse a.  
**take off:** despegar, sacarse.  
**take out:** extraer, sacar.  
**throw away:** tirar (en la basura)  
**turn down:** bajar (el volumen)  
**turn up:** subir (el volumen)  
**espect:** encender (televisión, luces etc.)

### *¿Cuándo se habla de la voz pasiva?*

Se habla de voz pasiva cuando queremos poner mayor énfasis en el objeto de una oración porque resulta más importante.

Así el objeto se convierte en el sujeto y el que era el sujeto pasa a ser el agente de la oración pasiva.  
Por ejemplo:

Observemos la siguiente **oración activa**:

The cat killed the mouse.  
Subject      Verb      Direct object.

Ahora si queremos hablar preferentemente de lo que le ocurrió al objeto de esa oración ésta debería presentarse en **voz pasiva** de la siguiente manera:

The mouse was killed by the cat.  
Subject      Verb      Agent

Como vemos el que era el sujeto de la oración activa ahora se convirtió en el agente de la oración pasiva precedido por la preposición **by** si es que es importante señalar el agente.

En la mayoría de las oraciones pasivas el agente no interesa porque el énfasis está puesto en el nuevo sujeto.

Otros ejemplos:

American people speak English. (oración activa)

English is spoken by American people. (oración pasiva)

They built this bridge in 1951. (oración activa)

The bridge was built (by them) in 1951. (oración pasiva)

### **¿Cómo se forma el verbo de la voz pasiva?**

El verbo de la voz pasiva se forma con el verbo **be + past participle** del verbo empleado.

Pero hay que considerar lo siguiente:

- 1) Si el verbo de la oración activa estaba en **Present Simple** al pasarlo a la voz pasiva se presentará de la siguiente manera:

Some people in Spain *speak* French.

French **is spoken** by some people in Spain.

- 2) Si el verbo de la oración activa estaba en **Present Continuous** se presenta de la siguiente forma:

I *am eating* some fish.

Some fish **is being eaten** by me.

- 3) Si el verbo de la oración activa estaba en **Past Simple** la voz pasiva queda:

Columbus *discovered* America in 1492.

America **was discovered** by Columbus in 1492.

- 4) Cuando el verbo de la oración activa estaba en **Past Continuous** la voz pasiva se presenta así:

Two women *were preparing* the meal.

The meal **was being prepared** by two women.

- 5) Cuando el verbo de la oración activa estaba en **Present Perfect** la oración pasiva quedaría así:

We *have seen* this movie before.

This movie **has been seen** by us before.

- 6) Si el verbo de la oración activa estaba en **Past Perfect** la voz pasiva sería de la siguiente forma:

He *had paid* the bill.

The bill **had been paid** by him.

- 7) Si el verbo de la oración activa estaba en **Futuro** con *going to* la oración pasiva quedaría así:

I *am going to change* the perspective.

The perspective **is going to be changed** by me.

- 8) Si el verbo de la oración activa estaba en **Futuro** con *will* la voz pasiva se formaría de la siguiente manera:

The company *will teach* us the rules.

The rules **will be taught** by the company.

9) La voz pasiva con los verbos modales (*can, must, may, should, ought to, might, will*, etc) se forma con el respectivo **modal + be + past participle**.

The homework **must be finished** today.

You **should be changed** by the doctor.

The church **would be built** in this place.

This software **could be downloaded**.

The house **might be painted** some day.

10) Por último, hay algunas oraciones que sólo pueden ser construidas en voz pasiva.

Por ejemplo:

The car **was crashed**.

I **was born** in 1970.

### *¿Cuándo hablamos de estilo indirecto?*

Cuando queremos indicar algo que fue dicho por otra persona se puede decir exactamente igual usando comillas.

Pero también es posible hacerlo utilizando el llamado **estilo indirecto o reported speech**.

Hay que tener en cuenta es que el sujeto y el verbo cambian cuando son presentados de esta forma.

Ejemplo:

Peter: I am tired.

Sally: He said he was tired. (**estilo indirecto**)

### **Cambios que sufre el verbo al pasarlo del estilo directo al estilo indirecto**

Estilo directo	Estilo indirecto
<b>Present Simple</b> <i>I arrive.</i>	<b>Past Simple</b> He arrived.
<b>Present Continuous</b> <i>I am arriving.</i>	<b>Past Continuous</b> He was arriving.
<b>Past Simple</b> <i>I arrived.</i>	<b>Past Perfect Simple</b> He had arrived.
<b>Past Continuous</b> <i>I was arriving.</i>	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b> He had been arriving.
<b>Present Perfect Simple</b> <i>I have arrived.</i>	<b>Past Perfect Simple</b> He had arrived.
<b>Present Perfect Continuous</b> <i>I have been arriving.</i>	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b> He had been arriving.
<b>Future con going to</b> <i>I am going to arrive.</i>	<b>Future in the past</b> He was going to arrive.
<b>Future con will</b> <i>I will arrive.</i>	<b>Future in the past</b> He would arrive.

## Los verbos modales también cambian cuando se pasan al estilo indirecto.

Estilo directo	Estilo indirecto
<b>Can</b> I <i>can</i> play the piano.	<b>Could</b> He said, <b>he could</b> play the piano.
<b>Must</b> I <i>must</i> finish the work.	<b>Had to</b> He said, <b>he had to</b> finish the work.
<b>Will</b> I <i>will</i> come.	<b>Would</b> He said, <b>he would</b> come.
<b>May</b> I <i>may</i> call you.	<b>Might</b> He said, <b>he might</b> call her.

Al pasar al estilo indirecto no sólo cambian el pronombre del sujeto y el tiempo verbal sino que también cambian los pronombres personales que reemplazan al objeto.

Por ejemplo:

I love *you*.

He said, he loved *her*.

We have lost *our* keys.

They said, they had lost *their* keys.

Además cambian las palabras **here**, **this** y **these**.

Here	$\longrightarrow$	There
This	$\longrightarrow$	That
These	$\longrightarrow$	Those

### ¿Cuáles son las preguntas indirectas?

Al pasar una pregunta del estilo directo al indirecto el orden de los elementos que componen dicha pregunta también varía.

- Preguntas con respuestas cerradas (sí o no):

Are *you* boring? (estilo directo)

He asked if **we were** boring. (estilo indirecto)

Does he speak Russian? (estilo directo)

He asked **if he spoke** Russian. (estilo indirecto)

- Preguntas con abiertas (Wh-questions):

What time is it? (estilo directo)

She asked **what time it was**. (estilo indirecto)

Where do they live? (estilo directo)

You asked **where they lived**. (estilo indirecto)

## **¿Cómo y cuándo se usan los condicionales?**

Los condicionales se usan para hablar de cosas o situaciones que pueden ocurrir o que no ocurrieron en el pasado.

Existen tres tipos de condicionales:

a) En el **primer condicional** se emplea ***if + present simple*** para hablar de cosas que ocurren o posiblemente ocurran y se utiliza **futur con will** para expresar el resultado de una acción.

La primera parte de la oración que comienza con ***if*** se denomina ***if clause*** y nos indica lo que puede ocurrir o es posible que ocurra, en tanto que la otra parte de la oración es la consecuencia o resultado. (Si ocurre una cosa también va a ocurrir la otra)

Ejemplos:

**If it rains, I will get wet.** (Si llueve, me voy a mojar)

**I'll get wet if it rains.** (Esta oración tiene el mismo significado que la anterior)

**If he finds the keys, we will go by car.** (Si él encuentra las llaves nos iremos en auto)

**We'll go by car if he finds the keys.** (Esta oración tiene el mismo significado que la anterior)

b) En el **segundo condicional** se usa ***If + past simple*** para hablar de cosas que posiblemente ocurran aunque no sea probable de que así sea y en la otra oración se usa **would + verbo principal** para expresar los resultados. (Si ocurriera una cosa, ocurriría tal otra)

Ejemplos:

**If I had money, I would buy** a bicycle to you. (Si tuviera dinero, te compraría una bicicleta)

**I would buy** a bicycle to you **if I had** money. (Esta oración tiene el mismo significado que la anterior)

**If she went** to England for a year, **she would improve** her English. (Si ella fuera a Inglaterra por un año, mejoraría su inglés)

**She would improve** her English **if she went** to England for a year. (Esta oración tiene el mismo significado que la anterior)

También se puede usar ***if + past to be*** para expresar cosas imposibles.

Ejemplos:

**If I were** you, **I would choose** the most expensive. (Si yo fuera tú, elegiría el más caro)

**If he were** here, **he would come** with us. (Si él estuviera aquí, podría venir con nosotros)

**If you were** younger, **you would go** with the teenagers. (Si tú/ustedes fueran más jóvenes, podrían ir con los adolescentes)

Nótese que en estos casos, generalmente, se usa **were** como el pasado del verbo to be para todas las personas por igual.

c) En el **tercer condicional** se usa ***If + past perfect*** para hablar de cosas que no ocurrieron en el pasado y en la otra oración se utiliza **would + have + past participle** para expresar los resultados hipotéticos. (*Si hubiera ocurrido una cosa, habría sido posible tal otra*)

Ejemplos:

**If they had known** about the situation, they **would have helped** you. (Si ellos hubieran conocido esa situación, ellos les habrían podido ayudar)

They **would have helped** you **if they had known** about the situation. (Esta oración tiene el mismo significado que la anterior)

**If I had had** enough time, **I would have invited** them. (Si hubiera tenido tiempo suficiente, los habría invitado)

**I would have invited** them **if I had** had enough time. (Esta oración tiene el mismo significado que la anterior)

**Get up!**



**LESSON NINE**  
**Present Perfect Continuous**  
**Past Perfect Continuous**  
**Future Continuous**  
**Future Perfect**  
**Future Perfect Continuous**

**Present Perfect Continuous:**

*¿Cuándo se usa el Present Perfect Continuous?*

- 1) Se usa **Present Perfect Continuous** para referirse a una acción desarrollada en el pasado que acaba de terminar cuyos efectos continúan en el presente.

Ejemplos:

I **have been sleeping**. (Yo he estado durmiendo)

They **have been playing** football. (Ellos han estado jugando fútbol)

Have you **been fighting** with them? (¿Han estado ustedes peleando con ellos?)

- 2) Hay algunos verbos que no pueden ser utilizados en progresivo tales como: *be*, *have* y *know*, por lo tanto, con dichos verbos se debe usar **Present Perfect** y no **Present Perfect Continuous**.

Ejemplos:

He has been tired. (No se puede decir *he has been being tired*)

I have had the flu. (No se puede decir *I have been having the flu*)

We have only known them since last week. (No se puede decir *we have been knowing them since last week*)

- 3) En general, se usa **Present Simple** para referirse a acciones permanentes o de larga duración y **Present Perfect Continuous** para hablar de acciones temporales.

Ejemplos:

That boy **has been waiting** there all the morning.

He **has been working** hard these days.

- 4) El **Present Perfect Continuous** sirve para responder preguntas sobre algo que hemos estado haciendo. (*how long.....? / how often...? / how much....?*)

Ejemplos:

I **have been studying** English for six months. (How long **have I been studying** English?)

We **have been gardening** all day. (How often **have we been gardening**?)

I **have been waiting** for you a long time. (How much **have I been waiting** for you?)

They **have been planting** many rose bushes. (How many rose bushes **have they been planting**?)

- 5) El **Present Perfect Continuous** también se usa seguido de **for + un período de tiempo** y **since + un momento dado** para referirse a una acción que ocurrió en el pasado que sigue realizándose sin interrupción hasta el presente.

Ejemplos:

How long **have you been sleeping?** I've been sleeping *for seven hours*.

Has it been raining for a long time? It's been raining *for four days*.

We **have been living** here *since 1998*.

I **have been trying** to call you *since last weekend*.

6) Además, se utiliza **Present Perfect Continuous** con algunas expresiones como: *recently, lately, this week*, etc.

Ejemplos:

The company **has been wasting** money *recently*.

I **have been eating** much *lately*.

He **has been studying** hard *this week*.

### ¿Cómo se forma el Present Perfect Continuous?

El **Present Perfect Continuous** se forma con el **Present Perfect** del verbo **to be** + gerundio.

### PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS: HAVE/HAS + BEEN + GERUNDIO.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I have been doing. (I've been doing)	I have not been doing. (I haven't been doing)	Have I been doing?
You have been doing. (You've been doing)	You have not been doing. (You haven't been doing)	Have you been doing?
He has been doing. (He's been doing)	He has not been doing. (He hasn't been doing)	Has he been doing?
She has been doing. (She's been doing)	She has not been doing. (She hasn't been doing)	Has she been doing?
It has been doing. (It's been doing)	It has not been doing. (It hasn't been doing)	Has it been doing?
We have been doing. (We've been doing)	We have not been doing. (We haven't been doing)	Have we been doing?
You have been doing. (You've been doing)	You have not been doing. (You haven't been doing)	Have you been doing.
They have been doing. (They've been doing)	They have not been doing. (They haven't been doing)	Have they been doing?

Ejemplos:

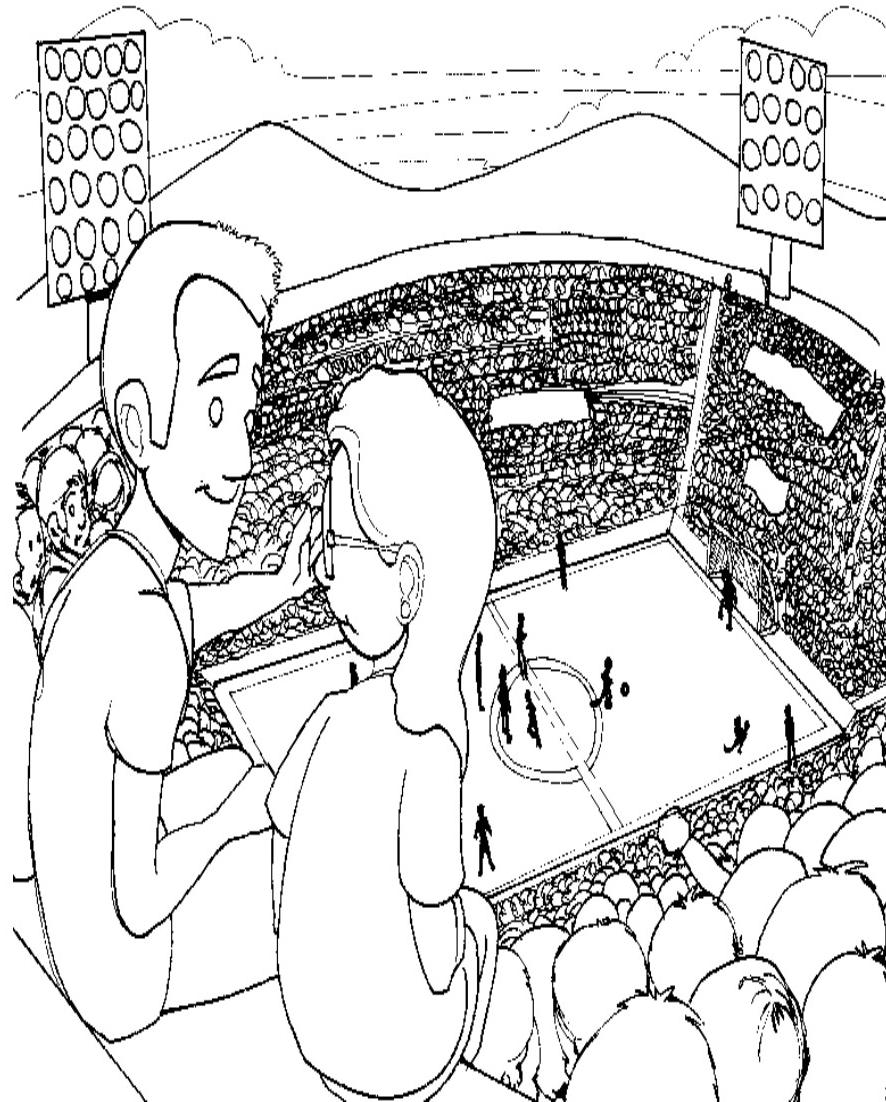
I **have been running** lately. I **have not been sleeping** well. I **haven't been attending** to classes.

She **has been watching** TV. She **has not been going** there. She **hasn't been smoking** recently.

We **have been seeing** it. We **have not been working** hard. We **haven't been playing** tennis.

**Have you been calling him lately?**  
Yes, I **have been phoning** you lately.  
No, I **haven't been phoning** you lately.

**Has he been waiting for a long time?**  
Yes, he **has been waiting** for two hours.  
No, he **hasn't been waiting** for two hours.



**They have been playing very well for two hours.**

## Past Perfect Continuous

### ¿Cuándo se usa el Past Perfect Continuous?

- 1) Se utiliza **Past Perfect Continuous** para referirse a una acción o situación que se desarrolló hasta un momento dado en el pasado (previo a otro acontecimiento).

Ejemplos:

She **had been looking** for a new job for weeks when she finally got one.

I **had been watching** TV when he came home.

- 2) Además, se usa **Past Perfect Continuous** para expresar cuánto tiempo algo había estado ocurriendo en el pasado. (How long...?)

Ejemplos:

They **had been travelling** for 10 hours. (How long **had they been travelling**?)

I had been playing handball since this morning. (How long **had I been playing** handball?)

- 3) Se emplea **Past Perfect Continuous** para hablar de acciones temporales y no para referirse a situaciones permanentes.

Ejemplos:

I **had been running** for an hour there when suddenly I collapsed.

That huge statue **had stood** there for 100 years. (No se puede decir *that huge statue had been standing there for 100 years.*)

- 4) Tampoco se puede utilizar **Past Perfect Continuous** con los verbos que no se usan en tiempos progresivos. (*be, know, have, etc.*)

Ejemplos:

I hadn't known about him for many years when we met again. (No se puede decir I had not been knowing him for many years when we met again.)

He had been ill since last week. (No se puede decir He had been being ill since last week.)

### ¿Cómo se forma el Past Perfect Continuous?

El **Past Perfect Continuous** se forma con el **Past Perfect Verb To be + gerundio**.

## PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS: HAD + BEEN + GERUNDIO.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I had been doing.	I had not been doing. (I hadn't been doing)	Had I been doing?
You had been doing.	You had not been doing. (You hadn't been doing)	Had you been doing?
He had been doing.	He had not been doing. (He hadn't been doing)	Had he been doing?
She had been doing.	She had not been doing. (She hadn't been doing)	Had she been doing?
It had been doing.	It had not been doing. (It hadn't been doing)	Had it been doing?
We had been doing.	We had not been doing. (We hadn't been doing)	Had we been doing?
You had been doing.	You had not been doing. (You hadn't been doing)	Had you been doing?
They had been doing.	They had not been doing. (They hadn't been doing)	Had they been doing?

Ejemplos:

He **had been running** for two hours when he fell down.

We **had been standing** there for six hours by the time he opened the door.

It **had been raining** for months.

**Had** you **been playing** rugby before he called you?

Yes, I **had been playing** rugby before he called me.

No, I **hadn't been playing** rugby before he called me.

How long **had** you **been playing** rugby before he called you?

I **had been playing** rugby for 2 hours.



**How long had she been waiting before her friend came?**

## **Future Continuous**

### **¿Cuándo se usa el Future Continuous?**

1) Se usa **Future Continuous** para expresar alguna acción en progreso en un tiempo particular del futuro.

Ejemplos:

By this time tomorrow we **will be travelling** to the North.  
Good journey. We **will be thinking** of you.

2) También se emplea **Future Continuous** para referirse a eventos futuros ya establecidos o que se espera que ocurran.

Ejemplos:

I expect we **will be meeting** you one of these days.  
They **will be teaching** people to play the guitar next week.

3) **Future Continuous** se emplea para mostrar cosas que van a ocurrir de todos modos sin que nosotros hayamos tomado decisión alguna para que así sea.

Ejemplos:

Don't worry we can buy it tomorrow. We **will be going** to the mall anyway.  
I can take you. I **will be visiting** your parents anyway.

4) También se puede utilizar **Future Continuous** para realizar preguntas de una manera muy formal sobre planes futuros que alguien tenga, sin querer influir en esa decisión.

Ejemplos:

**Will you be travelling** this summer?  
**Will you be preparing** your breakfast tomorrow morning?

### **¿Cómo se forma el Future Continuous?**

1) **Future Continuous** se forma con **will + be + gerundio**.

## FUTURE CONTINUOUS: WILL + BE + GERUNDIO

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I will be doing.	I will not be doing. (I won't be doing)	Will I be doing?
You will be doing	You will not be doing. (You won't be doing)	Will you be doing?
He will be doing.	He will not be doing. (He won't be doing)	Will he be doing?
She will be doing.	She will not be doing. (She won't be doing)	Will she be doing?
It will be doing.	It will not be doing. (It won't be doing)	Will it be doing?
We will be doing.	We will not be doing. (We won't be doing)	Will we be doing?
You will be doing.	You will not be doing. (You won't be doing)	Will you be doing?
They will be doing.	They will not be doing. (They won't be doing)	Will they be doing?

\* Recordar que **will** puede ser reemplazado por **shall** tanto en la primera persona singular como plural (Es decir con **I** y **We**).

Ejemplos:

He **will not be doing** this by tomorrow.

I think they **will be causing** the same troubles next week.

**Will you be trying** to improve your marks next Saturday?

Yes, I **will be trying** to improve my marks next Saturday.

No, I **won't be trying** to improve my marks next Saturday.

**Will you be buying** a new car next month?

Yes, I **will be buying** a new car next month.

No, I **won't be buying** a new car next month.

2) También hay que decir que el tiempo **Future Continuous** puede formarse con **going to**.

Ejemplos:

I **am going to be studying** all day tomorrow.

They **are going to be learning** another language next year.

## Future Perfect

### ¿Cuándo se usa Future Perfect?

Se usa **Future Perfect** para referirse a alguna acción que va a ser terminada o completada en el futuro en un determinado momento.

Ejemplos:

By next year we **will have been** here for five years.

The engineers say they **will have finished** the bridge by September.

### ¿Cómo se forma el Future Perfect?

Se forma con **will have + past participle**.

#### FUTURE PERFECT: WILL HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE:

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I will have done.	I will not have done. (I won't have done)	Will I have done?
You will have done.	You will not have done. (You won't have done)	Will you have done?
He will have done.	He will not have done. (He won't have done)	Will he have done?
She will have done.	She will not have done. (She won't have done)	Will she have done?
It will have done.	It will not have done. (It won't have done)	Will it have done?
We will have done.	We will not have done. (We won't have done)	Will we have done?
You will have done.	You will not have done. (You won't have done)	Will you have done?
They will have done.	They will not have done. (They won't have done)	Will they have done?

Ejemplos:

We **will have finished** by this time tomorrow morning.

They **will have climbed** Mt. Everest three times before the end of this year.

By this time next year I **will have mastered** Italian.

**Will you have helped** me before the meeting begins?

Yes, I **will have helped** you before the meeting begins.

No, I **won't have helped** you before the meeting begins.

## Future Perfect Continuous

### ¿Cuándo se usa Future Perfect Continuous?

Se utiliza **Future Perfect Continuous** para hablar de una actividad continua.

Ejemplos:

I **will have been teaching** for three years within five months.

Next summer you **will have been living** here for five years.

### ¿Cómo se forma el Future Perfect Continuous?

El **Future Perfect Continuous** se forma con **will + have been + gerundio**

#### **FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS: WILL + HAVE BEEN + GERUNDIO**

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I will have been doing.	I will not have been doing. (I won't have been doing)	Will I have been doing?
You will have been doing.	You will not have been doing. You won't have been doing.	Will you have been doing?
He will have been doing.	He will not have been doing. (He won't have been doing)	Will he have been doing?
She will have been doing.	She will not have been doing. (She won't have been doing)	Will she have been doing?
It will have been doing.	It will not have been doing. (It won't have been doing)	Will it have been doing?
We will have been doing.	We will not have been doing. (We won't have been doing)	Will we have been doing?
You will have been doing.	You will not have been doing. (You won't have been doing)	Will you have been doing?
They will have been doing.	They will not have been doing. (They won't have been doing)	Will they have been doing?

Ejemplos:

By this time next week they **will have been preparing** for his final exam for 1 month.

Within two months they **will have been living** here for 5 years.

I **will have been going** there for 3 years next weekend.

How long **will** your parents **have been living** in Chile by this time next year?

They **will have been living** in Chile for 8 years by this time next year.

## APPENDIX

### Formas apostrofadas

- In spoken English, we usually pronounce **I am** as one word. The short form (**I'm**) is a way of writing this:
- I am** ⇔ **I'm**      - I'm feeling tired this morning.
- It is** ⇔ **it's**      - Do you like this jacket? Yes, it's very nice.
- They have** ⇔ **they've**      - Where are your friends? They've gone home.  
etc.

When we write short forms, we use ' (an apostrophe):

**I am** ⇔ **I'm**      **he is** ⇔ **he's**      **you have** ⇔ **you've**      **she will** ⇔ **she'll**

We use these short forms with **I/he/she**, etc.:

am ⇔ 'm	<b>I'm</b>						
is ⇔ 's		<b>he's</b>	<b>she's</b>	<b>it's</b>			
are ⇔ 're					<b>we're</b>	<b>you're</b>	<b>they're</b>
have ⇔ 've	<b>I've</b>				<b>we've</b>	<b>you've</b>	<b>they've</b>
has ⇔ 's		<b>he's</b>	<b>she's</b>	<b>it's</b>			
had ⇔ 'd	<b>I'd</b>	<b>he'd</b>	<b>she'd</b>		<b>we'd</b>	<b>you'd</b>	<b>they'd</b>
will ⇔ 'll	<b>I'll</b>	<b>he'll</b>	<b>she'll</b>	<b>it'll</b>	<b>we'll</b>	<b>you'll</b>	<b>they'll</b>
would ⇔ 'd	<b>I'd</b>	<b>he'd</b>	<b>she'd</b>		<b>we'd</b>	<b>you'd</b>	<b>they'd</b>

- **I've** got blue eyes.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's = **is** or **has**:

- She's going out this evening. (she's going = she **is** going)
- She's gone out. (she's gone = she **has** gone)

'd = **would** or **had**:

- A: What would you like to eat?
- B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I **would** like)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I **had** lost)

Do *not* use short forms if the verb is at the end of the sentence

- Are you tired? Yes, I **am**. (*not* Yes, I'm)

We use short forms with **I/you/he/she/it** etc. But we use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:

- **Who's** your favourite singer? = (Who is...)
- **What's** the time? = (What is...)
- **There's** a big tree in the garden. = (There is...)
- **My sister's** working in London. = (My sister is working...)
- **Jack's** gone out. = (Jack has gone out.)
- **What colour's** your car? = (What colour is your car?)

Negative short forms

**Not** ⇔ **n't**

<b>isn't</b>	= is not	<b>don't</b>	= do not	<b>can't</b>	= cannot
<b>aren't</b>	= are not	<b>doesn't</b>	= does not	<b>couldn't</b>	= could not
<b>wasn't</b>	= was not	<b>didn't</b>	= did not	<b>won't</b>	= will not
<b>weren't</b>	= were not			<b>wouldn't</b>	= would not
<b>hasn't</b>	= has not			<b>shouldn't</b>	= should not
<b>haven't</b>	= have not			<b>musn't</b>	= must not
<b>hadn't</b>	= had not			<b>needn't</b>	= need not

- We went to her house but she **wasn't** at home.
- Where's John? I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him.
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. = (I will not...)

### ‘s (apostrophe + s)

‘s can mean different things:

a) ‘s = **is** or **has** (see section 2 of this appendix)

b) **let's** = **let us**.

- The weather is nice. **Let's** go out. = (**Let us** go out)
- c) Mary’s camera =(her camera) / my brother’s car =(his car) / the manager’s office = (his / her office), etc.

Compare:

- **Mary's** camera was very expensive. (**Mary's** camera = **her** camera)
- **Mary's** a very good photographer. (**Mary's** = **Mary is**)
- **Mary's** got a new camera. (**Mary's** got = **Mary has** got)

## Resumen de terminaciones

s and -es

*noun + (plural)*

bird ⇔ birds      place ⇔ places      question ⇔ questions

*verb + s (he/she/it – s)*

think ⇔ thinks      live ⇔ lives      remember ⇔ remembers

But

+ es after -s, -sh,-ch or -x:

bus	⇒ buses	pass	⇒ passes	address	⇒ addresses
dish	⇒ dishes	wash	⇒ washes	finish	⇒ finishes
watch	⇒ watches	teach	⇒ teaches	sandwich	⇒ sandwiches
box	⇒ boxes				

also

potato	⇒ potatoes	do	⇒ does
tomato	⇒ tomatoes	go	⇒ goes

-f/-fe ⇔ -ves:

shelf	⇒ shelves	knife	⇒ knives	but roof	⇒ roofs
-------	-----------	-------	----------	----------	---------

-y ⇔ -i-

-y ⇔ -ies:

study	⇒ studies	(not study's)	family	⇒ families	(not familys)
story	⇒ stories	city	⇒ cities	baby	⇒ babies
try	⇒ tries	marry	⇒ marries	fly	⇒ flies

-y ⇔ -ied

study	⇒ studied				
try	⇒ tried	marry	⇒ married	copy	⇒ copied

-y ⇔ -ier/iest

easy	⇒ easier / easiest	(not easier / easiest)	
happy	⇒ happier / happiest	lucky	⇒ luckier / luckiest
heavy	⇒ heavier / heaviest	funny	⇒ funnier / funniest

-y ⇔ ily

easy	⇒ easily (not easily)				
happy	⇒ happily	lucky	⇒ luckily	heavy	⇒ heavily

**-y** does not change to **i** if the ending is **-ay/-ey/-oy/-uy**:

holiday	⇒ holidays	(not holidaies)					
enjoy	⇒ enjoys / enjoyed	stay	⇒ stays / stayed	buy	⇒ buys	key	⇒ keys

but

say	⇒ said	pay	⇒ paid	(irregular verbs)
-----	--------	-----	--------	-------------------

## -ing

Verbs that end in -e (make / write / drive, etc.):

-e ⇔ ing:

make ⇔ making      write ⇔ writing      come ⇔ coming      dance ⇔ dancing

Verbs that end in -ie (die / lie / tie):

-ie ⇔ -ying:

lie ⇔ lying      die ⇔ dying

**stop** ⇔ **stopped** (p ⇔ pp) / **big** ⇔ **bigger** (g ⇔ gg), etc.

vowel letters (V):      a    e    i    o    u

consonant letters (C):    b    c    d    f    g    k    l    m    n    p    r    s    t

Sometimes a word ends in *a vowel + a consonant (I + C)* – for example, **stop**, **big**.

Before -ing / -ed / -er / -est, the consonant at the end (-p / -g / -t, etc.) is doubled (⇒ -pp- / -gg- / -tt- etc.)

For example:

**V + C**

stop	S T O	P	p ⇔ pp	stopping	stopped
run	R U	N	n ⇔ nn	running	
get	G E	T	t ⇔ tt	getting	
swim	S W I	M	m ⇔ mm	swimming	
big	B I	G	g ⇔ gg	bigger	biggest
hot	H O	T	t ⇔ tt	hotter	hottest
thin	T H I	N	n ⇔ nn	thinner	thinnest

This does *not* happen

a) if the word ends in *two consonant letters (C + C)*:

**C + C**

help	H E L	P	helping	helped
work	W O R	K	working	worked
fast	F A S	T	faster	fastest

b) if the word ends in *two vowels letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C)*:

**V + V + C**

need	N E	E D	needing	needed
wait	W A	I T	waiting	waited
cheap	C H	E A P	cheaper	cheapest

c) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

stress

happen	=	H A P-pen	⇒ happening/happened ( <i>not</i> happened)
visit	=	V I S-it	⇒ visiting/visited
remember	=	re- M E M-ber	⇒ remembering/remembered
but prefer	=	pre-F E R (stress at the end)	⇒ preferring/preferred
begin	=	be- G I N (stress at the end)	⇒ beginning

d) if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants)

enjoy ⇔ enjoying/enjoyed      snow/snowing/snowed      few/fewer/fewest

**Verbos más comunes seguidos por Gerundios:**

appreciate avoid complete consider delay deny	discuss dislike enjoy finish can't help keep	mind miss practice recommend suggest understand
--	---	--

**Verbos que pueden ser seguidos por Gerundios e Infinitivos:**

advise begin continue forget hate like  stop (se usa seguido por un infinitivo de propósito -in order to-)	love prefer regret remember start try
--	--

**Verbos más comunes seguidos por Infinitivos:**

afford agree appear arrange ask care claim decide demand	expect hesitate hope learn manage meant need offer	plan prepare promise refuse seem wait want wish
--	---	--

**Verbos seguidos por un Pronombre + un Infinitivo:**

advise allow ask cause challenge dare	forbid hire instruct invite need order	permit remind require teach tell want
--	---	--

## Preposiciones más comunes combinadas con adjetivos y verbos:

be absent <b>from</b>	dream <b>of, about</b> + gerund	be opposed <b>to</b> + gerund
be accused <b>of</b> + gerund	be engaged <b>in, to</b>	participate <b>in</b> + gerund
be accustomed <b>to</b> + gerund	be excited <b>about</b> + gerund	be patient <b>with</b>
be acquainted <b>with</b>	be exhausted <b>from</b>	be pleased <b>with</b>
be addicted <b>to</b>	excuse <b>for</b>	be polite <b>to</b>
be afraid <b>of</b>	be faithful <b>to</b>	be prepared <b>for</b>
agree <b>with</b>	be familiar <b>with</b>	be protected <b>from</b>
be angry <b>at, with</b>	feel <b>like</b>	be proud <b>of</b>
be annoyed <b>with, by</b>	fight <b>for</b>	provide <b>with</b>
apologize <b>for</b> + gerund	be filled <b>with</b>	be qualified <b>for</b>
apply <b>to, for</b>	be finished <b>with</b>	recover <b>from</b>
approve <b>of</b>	be fond <b>of</b>	be remembered <b>for</b>
argue <b>with, about</b>	forget <b>about</b>	rescue <b>from</b>
arrive <b>in, at</b>	forgive <b>for</b> + gerund	be responsible <b>for</b> + gerund
be aware <b>of</b>	be friendly <b>to, with</b>	be satisfied <b>with</b>
believe <b>in</b> + gerund	be guilty <b>of</b> + gerund	be scared <b>of, by</b>
be bored <b>with, by</b>	hide <b>from</b>	stare <b>at</b>
care <b>about, for</b>	hope <b>for</b>	subscribe <b>to</b>
complain <b>about, of</b> + gerund	be innocent <b>of</b>	substitute <b>for</b>
be composed <b>of</b>	insist <b>(up) on</b> + gerund	succeed <b>in</b> + gerund
be concerned <b>about</b>	be interested <b>in</b> + gerund	take advantage <b>of</b> + gerund
contribute <b>to</b>	introduce <b>to</b>	take care <b>of</b> + gerund
be convinced <b>of</b>	be involved <b>in</b>	talk <b>about, of</b> + gerund
be coordinated <b>with</b>	be jealous <b>of</b>	be terrified <b>of, by</b>
be covered <b>with</b>	keep <b>from</b> + gerund	thank <b>for</b> + gerund
be crowded <b>with</b>	be known <b>for</b>	think <b>about, of</b> + gerund
decide <b>(up) on</b>	be located <b>in</b>	be tired <b>of</b> + gerund, <b>from</b>
depend <b>(up) on</b>	look <b>forward to</b> + gerund	be upset <b>with</b>
be disappointed <b>in, with</b>	be made <b>of, from</b>	be used <b>to</b> + gerund
distinguish <b>from</b>	be married <b>to</b>	be worried <b>about</b> + gerund

### Usos más comunes de *to do*:

to do a favour	hacer un favor
to do well	conducirse bien
to do badly	conducirse mal
to do justice	hacer justicia
to do good	hacer bien
to do evil	hacer mal
to do an exercise	hacer un ejercicio
to do business	hacer negocios
to do something	hacer algo
to do nothing	no hacer nada
to do one's duty	cumplir con su deber
to do one's hair	peinarse
to do a job	hacer una tarea
to do right	obrar bien
to do wrong	obrar mal
to do one's best	esmerarse
to do much	hacer mucho
to do little	hacer poco
to do without	pasarse sin
to do with	arreglárselas uno con...
to do an action	hacer una acción
to do damage	dañar

### Usos más comunes del To make:

to make progress	hacer progresos
to make a speech	hacer un discurso
to make a mistake	hacer una falta
to make a law	hacer una ley
to make a journey	hacer un viaje por tierra
to make a voyage	hacer un viaje por mar
to make haste	apresurarse
to make a fortune	hacer fortuna
to make money	hacer dinero
to make inquiries	informarse
to make an offer	hacer una oferta
to make an agreement	hacer un convenio
to make use of...	hacer uso de...
to make a proposal	hacer una proposición
to make an effort	hacer un esfuerzo
to make friends	hacerse amigos
to make a noise	hacer ruido
to make way	abrir paso
to make sure of...	asegurarse de...

to make war	hacer la guerra
to make love	hacer el amor
to make a mess	hacer un lío
to make a cake	hacer un pastel
to make tea	hacer el té
to make a bed	hacer ua cama
to mke a list	hacer una lista
to make arrangements	hacer arreglos
to make a bet	hacer una apuesta
to make dificulties	crear dificultades
to make plans	hacer planes
to make a fire	hacer fuego
to make an appointment	concertar una cita
to make signs	hacer señas
to make a hole	hacer un agujero
to make as if	aparentar
to make clear	aclarar
to make fun of	burlarse

## Cuadro de verbos irregulares

Past simple / past participle the same			Past simple / past participle different		
1	cost ⇔ cost cut ⇔ cut hit ⇔ hit hurt ⇔ hurt	cost cut hit hurt	let ⇔ let put ⇔ put shut ⇔ shut	let put shut	
2	lend ⇔ lent send ⇔ sent spend ⇔ spent build ⇔ built	lent sent spent built	lose ⇔ lost shoot ⇔ shot get ⇔ got light ⇔ lit sit ⇔ sat	lost shot got lit sat	break ⇔ broke choose ⇔ chose speak ⇔ spoke steal ⇔ stole wake ⇔ woke
	burn ⇔ burnt learn ⇔ learnt smell ⇔ smelt	burnt learnt smelt	keep ⇔ kept sleep ⇔ slept	kept slept	chosen spoken stolen woken
	feel ⇔ felt leave ⇔ left meet ⇔ met dream ⇔ dreamt mean ⇔ meant	felt left met dreamt meant			drive ⇔ drove ride ⇔ rode rise ⇔ rose write ⇔ wrote
3	bring ⇔ brought buy ⇔ bought fight ⇔ fought think ⇔ thought catch ⇔ caught teach ⇔ taught	brought bought fought thought caught taught			beat ⇔ beat bite ⇔ bit hide ⇔ hid
4	sell ⇔ sold tell ⇔ told	sold told			driven ridden risen written
	find ⇔ found have ⇔ had hear ⇔ heard hold ⇔ held read ⇔ read say ⇔ said	found had heard held read said			eaten fallen forgotten given seen taken
					blown grown known thrown flown drawn
					blew grew knew threw flew drew
					showed wore tore
5					worn torn
					begun drunk swum
					began drank swam

	<p>pay ⇔ paid make ⇔ made</p> <p>stand ⇔ stood      stood understand ⇔ understood      understood</p>		<p>ring ⇔ rang      rung sing ⇔ sang      sung run ⇔ ran      run</p>
		6	<p>come ⇔ came      come become ⇔ became      become</p>
		7	<p>do ⇔ did      done go ⇔ went      gone</p>

## Símbolos fonéticos y sonidos que representan

### Vocales y diptongos:

- / i:/	Como la <i>i</i> de <i>mina</i> , más cerrada y prolongada que en español
- / ɪ/	Como la <i>i</i> en <i>hijo</i> o <i>en rico</i> tal como se pronuncia cuando se habla rápidamente, pero más abierta y corta que en español
- / e /	Como la <i>e</i> en <i>perro</i>
- / æ /	Sonido intermedio entre una <i>a</i> abierta, como en <i>casa</i> , y una <i>e</i> también abierta, como en <i>perro</i> ; este sonido no tiene equivalente en español
- / ʌ /	Sonido aproximado al de la <i>a</i> en <i>prado</i> , pero más corto
- / ə:/	Como la <i>a</i> en <i>madre</i> , más abierta y prolongada
- / ɒ /	Como la <i>o</i> en <i>dote</i> , más abierta
- / ɔ:/	Como la <i>o</i> en <i>hora</i> , mucho más prolongada
- / ʊ /	Como la <i>u</i> en <i>mundo</i> , acortada
- / u:/	Como la <i>u</i> en <i>uno</i> , mucho más prolongada
- / ə /	Sonido intermedio y cerrado entre la <i>a</i> y la <i>o</i> , como el de la <i>e</i> en el artículo francés <i>le</i>
- / ɜ:/	Como la vocal anterior, pero un poco más cerrada
- / eɪ /	Como <i>ei</i> en <i>veinte</i>
- / əʊ /	Este diptongo no tiene equivalente en el español, ni tampoco los sonidos vocálicos que lo componen; es un sonido intermedio entre la <i>a</i> y la <i>o</i> seguido de <i>u</i> corta
- / aɪ /	Como <i>ai</i> en <i>aire</i>
- / aʊ /	Como <i>au</i> en <i>raudo</i>
- / ɔɪ /	Como <i>oy</i> en <i>doy</i>
- / ɪə /	Sonido aproximado al de <i>ia</i> en <i>mía</i> , pero la <i>a</i> más cerrada
- / eə /	Sonido aproximado al de <i>ea</i> en <i>vea</i> , pero la <i>a</i> más cerrada
- / ʊə /	Sonido aproximado al de la <i>ua</i> en <i>antigua</i>

### Consonantes:

- / p /	Como la <i>p</i> en <i>poner</i> (aspirada en posición inicial)
- / b /	Como la <i>b</i> en <i>ambos</i>
- / t /	Como la <i>t</i> en <i>tú</i> (aspirada en posición inicial)
- / d /	Como la <i>d</i> en <i>dar</i>
- / k /	Como la <i>k</i> en <i>kilo</i>
- / g /	Como la <i>g</i> en <i>gobierno</i>
- / f /	Como la <i>f</i> en <i>forma</i>
- / v /	v fuerte y definida, parecida a como se pronuncia en francés en la palabra <i>avec</i>
- / θ /	Como la <i>z</i> en <i>zapato</i> en la pronunciación española del centro y norte de la Península Ibérica
- / ð /	Como la <i>d</i> en <i>madera</i> , pero emitiendo el sonido con más fuerza
- / s /	Sonido parecido al de la <i>s</i> en posición inicial de palabra en la pronunciación hispanoamericana
- / z /	Como la <i>s</i> en <i>mismo</i>
- / ʃ /	Como la <i>ch</i> francesa en <i>chapeau</i> ; sonido parecido al que se emplea usualmente para

	pedir silencio
-/ʒ/	Como la <i>ll</i> en <i>llover</i> y la <i>y</i> en <i>ayer</i> en la pronunciación argentina
-/h/	Como la <i>j</i> en <i>jerga</i> , pero más suave y aspirada
-/tʃ/	Como la <i>ch</i> en <i>mucho</i>
-/dʒ/	Sonido parecido al de la consonante anterior, pero con vibración de las cuerdas vocales
-/m/	Como la <i>m</i> en <i>mamá</i>
-/n/	Como la <i>n</i> en <i>nada</i>
-/ŋ/	Como la <i>n</i> en <i>tengo</i>
-/l/	Como la <i>l</i> en <i>león</i>
-/r/	Como la <i>r</i> en <i>drama</i> , pero pronunciada con la lengua en posición más atrasada; este sonido no tiene equivalente en español
-/j/	Sonido semivocálico equivalente a la <i>y</i> en <i>yo</i> y a la <i>i</i> en <i>nieto</i>
-/w/	Sonido semivocálico equivalente a la <i>u</i> en <i>hueco</i>
-/r/	Cuando la transcripción fonética de una palabra aparezca una <i>r</i> pequeña y elevada significa que: - en inglés americano se pronuncia siempre, y que - en inglés británico sólo se pronuncia cuando va seguida de una vocal
<b>Acentuación:</b> En las palabras inglesas, las sílabas pueden ser tónicas y átonas, y las palabras polisílabas pueden tener más de una sílaba tónica. Para indicar la acentuación en la transcripción fonética, se coloca el signo /'/ antes de la sílaba tónica (por ejemplo), <b>about</b> /ə'baʊt/, donde la sílaba tónica es /baʊt/ y el signo /./ delante de la sílaba que tiene el acento secundario, si lo hay (por ejemplo, <b>engineer</b> /'endʒɪ'nɪər/, donde el acento secundario recae sobre /en/).	

## **BIBLIOGRAFÍA:**

- BOLTON, David; OSCARSON, Mats; PETERSON, Lennart and RODRÍGUEZ HALFFTER, Elena, *Basic Working Grammar*, Spanish Edition, United Kingdom, Thomas Nelson and Sons Ltd , 1988
- SWAN, Michael, *Practical English Usage*, Third Edition, New York, Oxford University Press, 2009
- KROHN, Robert and the Staff of the English Language Institute, *English Sentence Structure*, United States, University of Michigan, 1971
- MURPHY, Raymond; ALTMAN, Roann and RUTHERFORD, William E, *Grammar in Use, Reference and Practice for Intermediate Students of English*, United Kingdom, Cambridge University Press, 1998
- MURPHY, Raymond, *Essential Grammar in Use*, United Kingdom, Cambridge University Press, 1990
- MERINO, José, *Diccionario de dudas Inglés-Español*, Madrid, Paraninfo, 1978
- MARKLEY, Rayner W; SHEELER, Williard D , *Spot Drills, Low Intermediate*, United States, Oxford University Press, 1983